THE ART OF Riding

Newlie corrected and amended *of manie faults escaped in the* first printing, as well touching the *matter as the Bittes: whereof manie* were euill drawne, and as euill cut: but nowe made perfect through the diligence of the first Authour, maister *Blundeuill* of Newton Flotman in Norfolke.

Imprinted at London by Peter Short dwelling on Bredstreet hill at the signe of the Starre.

1597.

BRITISH MUSEUM

A short Preamble, declaring in what points the knowledge of a Horsebreeder chiefly consisteth, whereon dependeth the order of this booke.

WHo so is desirous, and therwith able to haue a good race or breed of horses (for to haue skil in this matter without good wil, and abilitie to execute the same, would litle preuail) ought first to knowe whither his ground bee meete for that purpose or not, and howe to seuer the same accordingly. Secondly, it behoueth him to know the diuers kinds of horses and Mares, to the intent that he may prouide himselfe of such as are most worthy to bee kept, and will thriue best in his grounde. Thirdly, how to vse them when he hath them, aswell at, and before the time of ingendring, as after that the mares haue conceiued and foled. And also how to vse their offspring, aswell during the foleage, as at their full age: so as they may redound to his moste commodity, and with leaste labor & charge. Of which three generall pointes, with what order I treate in this Booke, the contents of the Chapters, hereafter following, doe plainlie declare.

The contents of the Chapters.

WHich grounds are meet for races, and which be not. Also how such grounds ought to be deuided or seuered, and to what end such deuision serueth. Chap. 1

Of the diuers kinds of horses and Mares, according to the countries from whence they come, and which be best. chap. 2

Of the Turkie horse.

Of the horse of Barbarie.

Of

K. Blundeville (T.)

C. 31 d 7

THE ART OF

Newlie corrected and amended of manie faults escaped in the first printing, as well touching the matter as the Rittes: whereof manie were euill drawne, and as euill cut: but nowe made perfect through the diligence of the first Authour, maister *Blundeuill* of Newton Flotman in Norfolke.

Imprinted at London by Peter Short dwelling on Bredstreet hill at the signe of the Starre.

1597.

BRITISH MUSEUM

A short Preamble declaring in what points the knowledge of a Horsebreeder chieflie consisteth, whereon dependeth the order of this booke.

John his Booke: Godrell de Moorehouse.

WHo so is desirous, and therwith able to haue a good race or breed of horses (for to haue skil in this matter without good wil, and abilitie to execute the same, would litle preuail) ought first to knowe whither his ground bee meete for that purpose or not, and howe to seuer the same acordingly. Secondly, it behoueth him to know the diuers kinds of horses and Mares, to the intent that he may prouide himselfe of such as are most worthy to bee kept, and will thriue best in his grounde. Thirdly, how to vse them when he hath them, aswell at, and before the time of ingendring, as after that the mares haue conceiued and foled. And also how to vse their offspring, aswell during the foleage, as at their full age: so as they may redound to his moste commodity, and with least labor & charge. Of which three generall pointes, with what order I treate in this Booke, the contents of the Chapters, heereafter following, doe plainlie declare.

The contents of the Chapters.

WHich grounds are méet for races, and which be not. Also how such grounds ought to be deuided or seuered, and to what end such deuision serueth. Chap. 1

Of the diuers kinds of horses and Mares, acording to the countries from whence they come, and which be best. chap. 2

Of the Turkie horse.

Of the horse of Barbarie.

Of

Of the horses that come from the Iles of Sardinia and Corsica.
Of the Neapolitane, or courser of Naples.
Of the Jennet of Spaine.
Of the Hungarian.
Of the high Almaine.
Of the Flanders horse.
Of the Frizeland horse.
Of the Swethland horse.
Of the Irish Hobbie.
A comparison of the races aboue rehearsed, as touching the Climates vnder which they be bred, and which of them will thriue best here in England: and are most meete to serue euery breeders sundrie purpose or intent. chap. 3
How to chose Stallions and Mares meet for breede, and of what age they ought to be. And finallie how the Studs ought to be tame and not wilde. chap. 4
At what time of the yeare it is best for Horses and mares to engender. And in what sort they ought to bee put together. And how to know when a mare desireth the horse. Also how manie mares one Stallion is able to couer in one yeare. And finally, when the stallions should be remoued from them. chap. 5
What order is to be obserued touching the couering of Mares, when the stallions doe not run with them in the pastures, but are kept in the stables, and how the same stallions should be dieted. Also at what time of the daie the mares ought then to be couered. And finallie, how to know whether they haue conceiued or not. chap. 6
How to make your mares to conceiue either horsefoles, or mare foles, and of what colour you list to haue your selfe. chap. 7
Whether mares should be forced to abide the horse, though they haue no lust, or not. And how to make horse and mare, hauing no lust, to haue a lust to engender. And how to abate their lust if néed require. chap. 8
Which mares should be couered euery yéere, and which not. And how to doe, that those mares which you would haue to beare euerie yeare, shall not go barren. chap. 9
How mares should be vsed after they haue conceiued, & are with foale,

fole, & what cauſeth them to caſt their foles before their time. 10
How to helpe a mare that is in danger at the time of hir foling, how you ſhall cauſe hir to expell hir ſecundine or cleane. cha. 11
Howe to make a mare to caſt hir fole that is not worthy to bee bred, or for ſome other nædfull cauſe. chap. 12
How mares ſhould be vſed after they haue foled. Alſo how long the foles ſhould ſucke. And how they ought to be vſed during their foleage. And how to harden their howes. cha. 13
How to know of what ſtature, making, and diſpoſition the foles when they are new foled will be, when they come to age. cha. 14
Of the growth as well of marecolts as horſecolts. And how to know which will continue in goodnes, and liue longeſt. cap. 15
When, and how coltes ſhoulde bee weaned from their dammes: and how they ought be be ſeuered according to their kinds and ages. chap. 16
Of the gelding of coltes, and for what cauſe they bee gelt, alſo at what age, & in what time of the yeare they ought to be gelt. 17
At what age, and in what time of the yeare it is beſt taking vp of coltes to break them, and howe they ought at their firſt halteering to be vſed, chap. 18
How and at what age a coltes mouth ſhould be cut, or certeine of his teeth drawn, when the bit for fault thereof cannot haue his true reſting place. chap. 19
Of the culling out of refuſe mares and coltes. And alſo of thoſe that ſhould bee reſerued for the maintenance of the Studde or ſtocke. chap. 20

Thus ends the Contents of the Chapters following.

Take tarr & fresh hogsgrease of each halfe a pound hemlock
one handfull Arsmart: 3 handfulls & as many nettles, boyle
these in a pottle of old urine & apply it very hot to the swellinge;
but touch it not wth yoe hand for it is too sharpe:

Lastly take a pint of white wine vinegar aq. etc. of an ounce of
verdigrease & a little bundle of Isopp beate them in a mortar
& boyle it to an halfe pint: then wth balls of flax put in luke
warme into both his eares & stich the tipps together then tie
his head up to ye rack for two hours: doe thus twice

For a most desperate flarcy:

Take hearbe called Clay Clayes wch is a weed growinge by the
water side haueinge a great broad round leaf & is greene on
the upper side & white on the nether & dew of each alike
quantity beat them & strame them: then to a pint of that Juice
put of houseleeke a handfull halfe a pint of aquavita & two
good spoonfulls of pepper beaten & searced
off this liquor take a pint & give it the horse to drink then
wth round balls of flax dipt in the same stopp upp both his
eares then wth the stramed bruisings off all ye herbes, rubb ye
sores & stopp ye holes if there be any hollowness: doe thus twice
at ye least.

23 JY 89 MUSEUM

John: Godrell his booke de moore house

What things are to be considered in those grounds that should be appointed to the breeding of Horses. Also how such grounds ought to be diuided, and to what end such deuision serueth. Chap. i.

AND firste, as touching the ground, twoe thinges are to bee considered, that is, the quantitie and qualitie. The quantitie for twoe respectes. Firste, to the intent it bee not charged with more cattel than it is able to beare, for the Cattell not beeing sufficientlie fed can not prosper. The seconde respect is, for that the greater the ground is, the more partitions are needefull, partlie for change of pasture sake: for according vnto the olde prouerbe, Change of Pasture makes fatte Calues. And such partitions woulde be made with high Pale, Raile, or else deepe ditch, and verie thicke quickset. For horses, Mares, and wild Coltes, are not so easilie kept in, as other Cattell is. But chieflie such partitions are needefull, as well for the Stallions to runne euerie one seuerallie by himselfe, together with his owne Mares, during the time of ingendring, as also for the Coltes when weaning time commes, to be seuered from their dammes, of which two points we shall speake hereafter in their due place more at large. Moreouer, by such partitions, besides the commoditie of the grasse and haie, that shall be preserued thereby for Winter store, the ground it selfe being perhaps before that time, verie ample, wast and wilde, and thereby inclining the Cattell to bee of the like nature, shall bee brought to a more formalitie, and so the beastes themselues shall be made the more domesticall and familiar. And the rather, if they be handled and made tame in their youth, whereof we shall talke hereafter

more

more at large. Notwithstanding I would not haue the ground so straitned with partitions, but so as they may haue sufficient scope to run and trauell to and fro therein for their liuing. For as too much labour, leannesse and pouertie, depriueth them of lust to ingender, euen so ouermuch rest and fatnesse letteth conception, and causeth a dangerous foling. Wherefore I woulde wishe the mares to be kept in a meane estate, vntill they haue foled, & then to be best fedde, to the intent that they may haue aboundance of milke in their dugges, which matter shall be talked of hereafter more at full in his proper place.

But now to appoint how manie acres of ground will serue a Mare and hir offspring vntill they are meet to be broken, I think it not needfull, sith the goodnesse of the ground must rule that matter, and partlie the discretion of the owner, whoe by experience ought to know his owne ground best: for all grounds be not of like fertilitie. Neither do I thinke that anie owner is so ignorant, but that he knoweth that an Horse or a mare is a greater feeder than any other kind of cattell, and therefore had neede to haue greater allowance. Yet considering that the horse biteth nearer the ground than any other cattell (the sheepe and the Conie onelie excepted) whereby hee gathereth more foode out of one acre of ground, than any other beast can do almost out of an acre and an halfe: me thinkes that a third part more than will serue a Cow and hir offspring, should also feede a mare and hir offspring, so that they be well prouided for in Winter season. For at hard meate they be too hard for all other cattell, by reason they haue sharper teeth, and do both chawe and swallowe downe their meat with quicker speed. And therefore of Winter meate they hadde need to haue double allowance. And such winter meat for mares and coltes would be verie good and sweete haie, and well stacked vp in the driest and warmest places of those groundes, whereas they shoulde be wintered. Nigh vnto which stackes woulde bee built houses meet to harbour as well the mares with their foles, as the weanlings (but seuerally by themselues) in time of snow and such like stormie and cold weather: or else to auoid that coste and charge of building, the haie may be laied vpon houels made with great forked postes and strong rafters, in such sort as the

cattell

cattell may both ſtand and lie dry vnderneath the ſame, within which houels may be placed either ſtanding or hanging racks at ſuch heigth, as the foles together with their dammes may reache vnto the haie that ſhall be caſt therein. And if ſuch houels were incloſed with highe hedge or hurdle, they ſhould be ſo muche the warmer, and defende the cattell the better from the colde winde. Nigh vnto which houels or houſes, let there bee alwaies one paſture alwaies kept vntouched and not fed on vntill Shroftide, betwixt the which time and the midſt of Maie is alwaies moſt danger of hunger bain. Thus hauing talked ſufficientlie as touching the quantitie and deuiſion of the ground, let vs alſo ſpeake ſomewhat of the qualitie thereof. The qualitie chiefly conſiſteth in foure points. The firſt is, to haue plentie of ſhort and ſweet graſſe for common feede, and alſo of long and ranke graſſe as well for haie, as for the mares that giue ſucke. The ſecond is, to lacke no good water and freſh ſprings. The third, to haue drie laier. The fourth, to haue ſhade and shelter, either of trées, or of highe buſhes to defend the Sunne, the winde and ſtormie weather. And the drier, the harder vnder foot, and the higher that ſuch grounde is, the better: yea, and it is as very néedfull that ſome part thereof might be craggie and ſtonie (ſo it be not barren of graſſe) and ſpecially for the colts to run in, when they be weaned from their dammes. For to trauell to and fro in ſuch groundes for their liuing, ſhall make them to haue ſtrong legs, and hard houes.

By this meanes you may perceiue, that neither ranke, marriſh, colde, or wet groundes be méete for the purpoſe: for ſuche kindes of groundes, partlie for lacke of ſweet and firme foode, the graſſe whereof being ranke, ſoure and waterish: and partly for lacke of drie laier, moſt commonlie doe bring forth no other but ſlowe, heauie, dull, groſſe headed, ſide bellied, and gowtie legged Jades. And therefore I would wiſh him that would haue a good race, to foreſée that his ground be indowed with ſuch properties as are before rehearſed.

Of

Of the diuers kindes of Horses and Mares, according to the Countries from whence they come, and which be best. Chap. ii.

I Meane not here to treate of all the kindes of Horses that be in the world, for that were an infinite worke, and neuer attempted heretofore by any writer that I could read. For as Oppianus saith, there bee as manie kindes of Horses, as there be diuers countries and nations. And to saie the truth, it would be to smal purpose. For what should it auaile you to heare, vnlesse it were for nouelties sake, that in some countries there be horses no bigger than Rams, & in some countries, horses be made like Vnicornes, in some Countreyes againe, Mares doe conceiue with the Westerne winde, without the helpe of any Stallion, whose Coltes doe not liue aboue three yeares. Wherefore leauing all such strange kinds apart, I will onelie talke of the moste worthie, and specialle of such as haue beene knowne of late daies by good experience, to prosper verie well in this lande, and be not vnknowne to the moste part of the Gentlemen of this Realme, which kindes be these heere following. The Turkie, the Barbarian, the Sardinian, the Napolitan, the Jennet of Spaine, the Hungarian, the high Almaine, the Frizeland Horse, the Flanders Horse, and the Irish Hobbie. Of which kinds whilest I speake, I must needes also make some mention of the best kindes that haue beene either in Asia, Affrike, or Europe, from whence these be descended, though perhaps more bastardlie than I would wishe, and all for lacke of that industrie and dilligence which hath beene vsed by our forefathers in times past in breeding them, insomuch as wee can assure our selues in this our age of no certaine race: yea it sufficeth nowe to beleeue the seller that saith, the horse is of suche a countrey, or race, and therewith bee somewhat faire to the eie, and then all is good enough, though he be neuer so starke a Jade.

Of the Turkie Horse.

BVt now beginning first with the Turke, because he commeth further off, me thinketh it were not amisse to consider, that as Turky it selfe is of long time since become a great Empyre extending verie far into all the three parts of the worlde abouesaid, comprehending diuers kingdoms and countries, and yet altogither is commonly called by the name of Turkie: euen so the horses that come from any of the Turks dominions, or frontiers of his next neighbors, be called Turky horses, and therfore I think it good here to declare vnto you the opinions of the olde writers, touching the races that haue beene in those countries, nowe subiect to the great Turk or thereabout, to learne thereby (if it may be) whether those that we call Turky horses, be so indeed or not, and of which of those races they seeme most likely to descende. And first we will begin with the chiefe races of Asia, which be the *P*arthians, the Medes, the Armenians, the Cappodocians, & manie others. The *P*arthians (saith Absirtus) be great of stature, bolde, couragious, and sure of footemanship. Vigetius also saith, that they be verie well reined, and haue an easie ambling pace. But the Medes excell them in comlinesse of shape. The Armenians and Cappodocians, do descend of the Parthians, and be like them in all points: sauing that they are somewhat more beanie headed. The horses of Greece, as Absirtus saith, haue good legs, great bodies, comelie heads, and be of an high stature, and verie well made forward, but not backward, because they are pin buttocked, notwithstanding they be very swift and of a bold courage. But of all the races in Greece, both the horses and mares of Thessalia, for their beautie, bignesse, bountie, and courage, of all Authors are most celebrated. For which cause Xerxes at his comming into Greece made a running of horses in Chariots to be proclaimed onelie in Thessalia, because he would haue his own horses to run with the best horses in Greece. Iulius Cæsar also being Dictatour of Rome, knowing the courage of these horses, was the first that ordeined them as a spectacle before the people to fight with wild bulles, and to kill them. The *P*elleians and Magnesians, are also verie well commended. The *P*elleians

ans be so named of a towne in Thessalia, called Pella. And the Magnesians of Magnesia, a region of Macedonia, next adioining to Thessalia. The Epirotes be frowarde & disobedient to the bit, notwithstanding, Paulus Iouius making mention of the laste great wars which the Venetians had, not onlie with the Turks, but also in a maner with all christendom, giueth the Epirotes great praise for their swiftnesse and nimblenes. Insomuch as the Venetians (as he saith) esteemed their horses more, and waged their Riders better than anye other horsemen that serued them at that time. But the horses of Thracia, which is now the chiefest part of Turkie, in the which Constantinople the hed citie and seat of the great Turke standeth, be accounted worse than all the rest. For the most part of the writers doe describe them after this sort. The Thracians be foule & euill fashioned, hauing rough bodies, great shoulders, and rising backes like vnto camels, crooked legs and go rolling and vnseemlie, as well in their pace as running. Notwithstanding, the Horses that I haue seene come from Turky, as wel into Italy, as hither into England, be indifferent faire to the eie, though not very great nor stronglie made, yet very light and swift in their running and of great courage, and therefore seeme to descend of the Grecian race, before described by Absirtus. But their trauelling pace is neither amble, racke, nor trot, but a certeine kinde of easie traine. Albeit for the most part they be euill mouthed, by reason that in Turkie they be neuer ridden (as I haue learned) vntill they be ten or twelue years old, wherby they ware so headstrong, as they be not easilie brought to make a good stop: yea if when you will run him at his setting forth, you saie but this word (Braie) vnto him, hee will neuer leaue running so long as his breath will serue him, shunning nothing that shall stand in his waie, if he may go ouer the same by any meanes possible: for they be of nature very couragious, and will do more by gentle meanes then by stripes or great threatnings, for that maketh them more desperate, and bringeth them clean out of order. Thus much of the Turke.

Of the Horse of Barbarie.

THe Barbarian is a horse that coms out of Barbaria, a Countrey in Affrike, conteining vnder it the two regions of Mauri-

tania

tania lieng againſt Spaine, whereof the one is called Mauritania Tingitana: and the other is called Mauritania Ceſarienſis. It conteineth alſo the countrie of Numidia, and that part which is called Africa minor, that is to ſaie, the leſſer Affrike, ſo that Barbaria ſtretcheth verie farre. And there be many good races within the ſame, and in the frontiers of the regions thereabout, as the Mauritanians, the Libians, Cerenians, the Numidians, and manie others. The Mauritanians be much commended of the Writers, not onlie for their good ſhape and ſwiftneſſe in running, but alſo for that they be excellentlie well breathed, and thereby are both able to maintaine a verie long cariere, and alſo to abide any kind of labour and trauaile: yea and beſides that, they will abide the ſight and roaring of a Lion, whereof there is great ſtore and plentie in that countrey. Next vnto theſe are the Libians, which be of like goodneſſe, and of like ſhape, ſauing that the Libians be ſtronger made, longer bodied, thicker ribbed, and broader breaſted, and of all Horſes (as Aelianus ſaith) they doe require leſſe tending and keeping. For their maiſters in that countrey when they trauaile by the way, do neither wipe their legs, currie them, nor litter them, nor pare their hoofes, and as ſoone as their iourney is done they turne them forth to the paſture and make no more adoo. Againe, the Mares of this kind or race (as the Authors write) be ſo delighted with muſicke, as the heardman or keeper with the ſound of a pipe, may lead them whither he will himſelfe. The Cereneians (as Abſyrtus ſaith) be great of ſtature, and haue ſmall and gant bellies, they be ſwift in running, and ſure of ſootmanſhip, and in labour good at length, for which cauſes they were much vſed in the olde time to run for wagers in chariottes. But thoſe Horſes that we commonlie call Barbarians, doe come out of the king of Tunis lande, out of Maſſilia and Numidia, which for the moſt part be but little horſes, but therewith verie ſwift and able to make a verie long cariere, which is the cauſe why we eſteeme them ſo much. And it ſhoulde ſeeme by Vigetius, that this race came firſt from Spaine: who affirmeth them to be very ſwift in running and meete for the ſaddle. Thus I end with the races of Barbarie.

Of the Horſes of Sardinia and Corſica.

THe Horſes that come out of the Iles of Sardinia and Corſica, as Volateranus ſaith, haue ſhort bodies, and be very bold and courageous, and vnquiet in their pace, for they be of ſo fierce and hote cholericke complexion, and therewith ſo much vſed to running in their countrey, as they will ſtand ſtill on no ground. And therefore this kinde of horſe requireth a diſcréete and patient Rider, who muſt not be ouer haſtie in correcting him, for feare of marring him altogither.

Of the Courſer of Naples.

THe Napolitan, which we commonlie call a courſer of Naples, is a trim Horſe, being both comelie and ſtronglie made, and of ſo much goodneſſe, of ſo gentle a nature, and of ſo high a courage as anie Horſe is, of what countrey ſo euer he be. He is eaſilie knowne from all other Horſes, by his no leſſe cleane then ſtrong making, his limmes are ſo well proportioned in euerie point, and partlie by his portlineſſe in his gate, but chiefly by his long ſlender head, the nether part wherof, that is to ſaie, from the eies downewarde, for the moſte part is alſo ſomewhat bending like a Hawkes beake, which maketh him to reine with the better grace, and yet the Italians doe both write and ſaie, that theſe courſers be nothing ſo ſtrong nowe as they haue béene in times paſt, partlie perhaps for that like induſtrie of late daies hath not béene vſed in bréeding them as in times paſt; and partlie for that nature doth decay euery daie more and more, as well in man as in beaſt. But howſoeuer they be, in mine opinion, their gentle nature and docilitie, their comelie ſhape, their ſtrength, their courage, their ſure footmanſhip, their well reining, their lofty pace, their cleane trotting, their ſtrong galloping, and their ſwift running well conſidered (all which things they haue in maner by nature) they excell numbers of other races, euen ſo farre as the faire Greyhounds the fowle maſtiffe curres.

Of the Jennet of Spaine.

THe Jennet of Spaine is finelie made, both head, bodie, and legs, and verie ſéemelie to the eie, ſauing that his buttocks be ſome-

somewhat slender, and for his fine making, lightnesse, and swiftnesse withall, he is verie much esteemed, and especiallie of noble men (as Camerarius saith) which Oppianus also affirmeth, saieng: that the Jennet in swiftnesse passeth the Parthians, and all other horses what soeuer they be, euen so farre as the Egle excédeth all the birds in the aire, and as the Dolphin passeth all the fishes in the sea, but therwith he saith, that they be but small of stature, of small strength, and of small courage; all which things séeme to agrée very well with those Jennets that bee brought hither into England, vnlesse it be the last point. For I haue heard some of the Spaniards to set such praise on their Jennets courage, as they haue not letted to report that they haue carried their riders out of the field, I cannot tell how many miles after the Jennets themselues haue bén shot cleane through the bodies with Harquebushes. Which report I haue heard to be true by diuers of our own souldiers, which if it be true indéede, it dooth better counternaile their smal stature and little strength which is manifest to al mens eies that doe behold them, and yet Absirtus séemeth to be of a contrarie opinion: who writeth of them in this sort. The Horses of Spain (saith he) be of great stature, hauing fine heads, and right vp bodies, veris well compact togither in all partes, sauing that their buttocks be somewhat too slender. They be strong and able to endure great labor, and commonlie they be neither too fat nor yet too leane, and in their trauell they néede not to bee quickened with the spurre, and yet they be nothing méete to run or to passe a cariere, because their houes be not good. And as from their fole age vnto their full age they be verie obedient & tractable, so from thencefoorth they ware to be curst and froward. All which things perhaps might be truelie saied of the Spanish horse, in Absirtus time: for the most part of his saienges are verified by good experience euen in these our daies, vnlesse it be as touching his greatnes of stature and strength, which may be decaied since his time. And perhaps those horses whereof he writeth were of another climate than ours, which may cause muche alteration, both in stature and strength. For Albertus saith, that those horses which are bred betwixt the third clime and the end of the first, are alwaies of greatest stature, and speciallie those that are bred in Spain. Not-

withſtanding, thoſe that be bred in the ſeuenth climat, which is more towards the North, though they be not fullie ſo great, yet they be ſtronger, and alſo will indure much more labor. The pace of the Jennet is neither trot nor amble, but a comelie kinde of going like the Turke. Thus much of the Jennet.

Of the Hungarian.

THe Hungarian by Vigetius is deſcribed thus. The Hungarian (ſaieth he) hath a great and hooked head, and his eies ſtande almoſt without his head, his noſtrils are narrowe, and his iawes broad, his neck is long and rough, with a mane hanging downe beneath his knées, he hath a large bulk, a right back a long buſh taile, his legs be ſtrong, his paſternes ſmall, and his hoofes full and broad, his guttes are hollowe, and all his body is full of emptie corners, his buttockes are not halfe filled with fatte, neither doe the brawnes or his muſcles appeare, of ſtature he is more in length than heigth, and therewith ſomewhat ſide bellied, his bones are alſo great, he is rather leane than fat, which leanneſſe is ſo anſwerable to the other partes of his bodie, as the due proportion obſerued in his deformitie, maketh the ſame to be a beautie. And as touching his inwarde diſpoſition, hee is (as Vigetius ſaieth) both temperate and wiſe, and able to abide great labour, cold and hunger, and therefore verie méet for the warre. Camerarius alſo ſaith, that they be verie ſwift, and if they be prouoked by ſome iniurie, they will bothe bite and ſtrike, otherwiſe not. Their pace is a hard trot.

Of the Almaine Horſe.

THe Almaine is commonlie a great horſe, and though not fine lie yet very ſtronglie made, and therefore more méet for the ſhock than to paſſe a cariere, or to make a ſtrong manage, becauſe they be very groſſe and heauie, yet by induſtrie they are made lighter behind than before: for their riders do vſe in their maneging to make them to turne alwaies with their hinder partes, & not with their fore partes: like Jacke anapes, when hee is made to come ouer the chaine, whereby they kéepe their Horſes head alwaies vpon the enemie. The diſpoſition of this horſe (his heauy

mould

mould considered) is not euill, for he is very tractable and will labour indifferentlie well by the waie, but his pace for the moste part is a very hard trot.

Of the Flanders Horse.

The Flaunders Horse in his shape, disposition and pace, differeth in a maner nothing from the Almaine Horse: sauing that for the most part he is of a greater stature, and more puissant. The Mares also of Flanders bee of a great stature, strong, long, large, faire and fruitfull, and besides that will indure great labour, as is well seene, for that the Fleminges doe vse none other draught but with those mares in their waggons, in the which I haue seen two or three mares to go lightly away with such a burthen, as is almost incredible.

Of the Friezeland Horse.

The Frizeland horse is no very great horse, but rather of a meane stature, being therewith strong and well compact togither, and hath very good legs. And Vigetius saith, that the Frizeland horses be very swift in running, and able to maintaine a long course. And indeed I haue seene of them my selfe that would make a good cariere, and manege very well, and also do the Corvettie so trulie as any Jennet of Spain. But then the disposition of this horse is so diuelish, so stubborn, and so froward, as vnlesse the rider which first breaketh him be very bold, and therewith circumspect to correct him in time, he shall neuer bring him to any good, for hee will doe nothing without stripes, which also being giuen out of time, will make him so restiek, that neither faire meanes nor fowle meanes, will euer winne him from that vice againe. The pace of this horse is a good comely trot.

Of the Sweathland Horse.

The Sweacian or Sweathland Horse, so farre as I can coniecture, by those that the king his Embassadours haue of late daies brought with them into this Realme, whereof I am sure there be diuers here yet remaining, is no great or strong horse, but of a meane stature and strength, and I feare me scant well

conditioned. And I am induced to thinke ſo the rather, for that they be moſt commonlie pied and of two ſundry colours: or their legs at the leaſt be all white, euen vp to the bellie, their bodies being of another colour, which as Griſon ſaith, is a ſigne of ſmall force: albeit the Gentlemen in that country delight much to haue their horſes of diuers colours, and to weare as it were diuerſe liueries. Beſides that, many of them be wall eied, which is alſo a token of a ſhrewd & a ſtubborne diſpoſition. Notwithſtanding, I haue ſéene of them with good handling, to make an indifferent good manege, whereby I take them to be docible, and alſo bicauſe they come out of a cold countrey, I beléeue they will abide much hardneſſe.

Of the Iriſh Hobbie.

THe Iriſh Hobbie is a prettie fine Horſe, hauing a good head, and a body indifferentlie well proportioned, ſauing that manie of them be ſlender & pin buttocked, they be tender mouthed, nimble, light, pleaſant, and apt to be taught, and for the moſt part they be amblers, and therefore verie méet for the ſaddle, & to trauaile by the waie: yea and the Iriſh men both with darts and with light ſpeares, do vſe to ſkirmiſh with them in the field. And many of them do proue to that vſe very well, by means they be ſo light and ſwift, notwithſtanding I take them to be very neſh & tender to kéep, and alſo to be ſomewhat ſkittiſh and fearefull, partly perhaps by nature, and partlie for lacke of good breaking at the firſt.

A compariſon of the races aboue rehearſed, as touching the climates vnder which they be bred, and which of them will thriue beſt here in England, and are moſt meet to ſerue euery breeders purpoſe and intent. Cap. iii.

HItherto we haue talked of diuers kinds of horſes and mares, and therwith declared to you their ſhapes, natures, and diſpoſition. Now it reſteth that we briefly compare theſe kinds togither, that we may not onlie knowe thoſe that bee moſt méete to bréede within this Realme in generall, but alſo that the deſire and intent of euerie bréeder in particular may be ſatiſfied. For ſome man perchance woulde

haue

haue a breed of great trotting horses méte for the warre, and to serue in the field. Some other againe would haue a breed of ambling Horses of a meane stature for to iourny and to trauaile by the waie. Some perhaps would haue againe a race of swift runners to runne for wagers, or to gallop the Bucke, or to serue for such like exercises of pleasure. But the plaine countrieman would perchance haue a breed onely for draught or burthen. And first you shall vnderstand that generally those horses and mares will thriue best in this Realme, that be bred vnder a climate being of the like temperature that this our clime is, or at the least not much differing from the same. Wherefore naturally me thinkes the Turke, the Jennet of Spaine, the Barbarian and the Sardinian, being bredde in farre hotter countries than this is, should not be able to indure the colde of this countrey: nor to like heere so well as there, from whence they come. For though I haue seene them to bréed héere, and their offspring to growe to a perfect stature, and to bee like in shape to their sires and dames, yet for the most part they bee but neash and tender, and do require more attendance and fine keeping than others doe. And yet I will not denie, but that in continuance of time their nature may be altered, and such tendernesse may weare awaie well inough, and speciallie those that come out of Iland, sooner than the others, because they are more able to endure both heat and colde, and their nature doeth agrée the better with this Country being also an Iland. The Neapolitan although he be bred vnder a hotter climat than ours is, yet that region is verie temperate of it selfe: and therewith so fruitfull, as it is called the Garden or paradise of Italie, and the Horses there bredde, be of so strong and healthfull complexion, as they will not quaile whersoeuer they goe: and that they prosper so well here in this lande as in anie other forrein countrey, and not only the Quenes Maiesties race but also other mens races, and speciallie sir Nicholas Arnoldes Race doth wel testifie, from whence I haue séene so faire Coltes to come, and to proue so well in their doings, as euer I sawe in the realme of Naples, whoe for his industrie and diligence shewed in that behalfe, as hee is worthie to be much commended and praised, so I wishe that all Gentlemen, hauing abilitie, would

do

do the like: ſo ſhould they neither lacke good horſes to ſerue their Countrey in time of neede, nor yet to ſerue themſelues in their owne affaires. Now as touching the reſt of the races before mentioned, as the Hungarian, the high Almaine, the Flanders horſe, the Friezeland horſe, and the Iriſhe Hobbie: dailie experience teacheth, that they do proue very well heere, becauſe either they come out of colder countries then this is, or at the leaſt not out of much hotter, and ſome of them do proue better here then at home, and ſpeciallie ſuch as come from lowe graſſe and wet grounds, all the Flanders horſes and mares, both which doe war heere to be finer limmed, cleaner made, and ther with lighter and more nimble than they bee at home. But now to anſwere the diuerſe intentes of the breeders, I woulde wiſh him that ſeeketh to haue a race of good horſes, meete to ſerue in the field, to get a Napolitan Stallion if it bee poſſible, if not, let him take the high Almaine, the Hungarian, the Flanders, or the Frizeland Horſe, ſo that he bee of a conuenient ſtature, well proportioned, and meete for the purpoſe. What things are requiſite in a ſtallion, ſhall bee declared hereafter in his place, and let thoſe mares that ſhall be put to ſuch ſtallions bee of an highe ſtature, ſtronglie made, large and faire, and hauing a trotting pace, as the mares of Flanders, and ſome of our owne mares be: for it is not meete for diuers reſpects that Horſes of ſeruice ſhould amble. But if any man ſeeke to haue a race of fine ambling Horſes to trauell by the way, then I would wiſh his ſtallion either to bee a faire Jennet of Spaine, or at the leaſt a baſtarde Jennet, or elſe a faire Iriſhe ambling Hobbie, and the Mare to be alſo either a baſtard Jennet, bredde heere within this realme, hauing an ambling pace, or elſe ſome other of our ambling mares, ſo that ſhe be faire and well proportioned. And if any man deſire to haue ſwift runners, let him chooſe a Horſe of Barbarie, or a Turke to be his ſtallion, and let the mares which he ſhall put vnto him, be like of ſtature and making vnto him ſo nighe as may be, for moſt commonlie ſuch ſire and Damme, ſuch Colt. And ſithe all Writers doe ſo muche praiſe the Horſe of Barbarie, not onelie for his ſwiftneſſe in running, but alſo for his hardneſſe, in that hee needeth ſmall attendance and keeping, and will not ſurfet vpon euery little ſweate

or

or colde as ſome others do: he therefore that delighteth in Hunting and Hawking, hadde nede as mee thinkes, to chuſe this Horſe aboue all others to bee his ſtallion, to the intent hee may haue ſuch Coltes of him, as will be able to continue in ſuche extreame exercíſes, as to gallop the bucke, or followe a long winged Hawke. Either of which exercíſes, killeth yearelie in this realme many a good Gelding. But now to content the countrieman his deſire, which onlie ſéeketh to breed horſes for draught, or burthen, where ſhould I wiſh him to prouide himſelfe of mares and ſtallions better than here in England, whereas he may eaſilie find a number of ſtrong Jades more meete for that purpoſe, than for the ſaddle, and al for lacke of good order of bréeding, which if it might be once obſerued in this realme, I beléeue there wold be ſo good and ſo faire horſes bred heere, as in any place in Chriſtendome. But as for the cart horſe, ſo that he be of great ſtature, déepe ribbed, ſide bellied, and haue ſtrong legs and good hoſes: and therwithall will ſtoop to his worke, & lay ſure hold on the ground with his féete, and ſtoutlie pull at a pinche, it maketh no matter howe fowle or euill fauoured he bee. Notwithſtanding, I haue knowne ſome carriers that goe with cartes, to be ſo exquiſite in their choiſe of horſes, as vnleſſe they had béene as comelie to the eie as good in their worke, they would not buie them, inſomuch as I haue ſéene ſometime drawing in their cartes better proportioned horſes, than I haue knowne to be finelie kept in ſtables, as iewels for the ſaddle. The horſe that is meete for the carte, may ſerue alſo for the burthen, becauſe he is ſtrong and able to beare muche, but the packeman deſireth beſides ſtrength, three other things in his Horſe. Firſt, that he be a good trauailer, ſecondly that his hoſes be ſo good as he néed not to be often ſhod, thirdlie, that he be no vnreaſonable féeder, for the auoiding of expenſes: for which cauſe I thinke our packemen here in England, do moſt commonlie go with Geldinges, which lacking the feruent heate that ſtoned horſes haue, cannot conſume ſo much meate as they doe, but chieflie perhaps bicauſe the Geldinges are more eaſie to rule by the waie than horſes. Thus hauing ſufficientlie talked of diuers kinds of horſes and mares, and which be meeteſt for this realme, aſwell in generall, as to ſerue diuers vſes in particular,

I will now shewe you how to chuse a Stallion or mare méet for breed.

How to chuse Stallions and Mares méte for generation and of what age they ought to be. Also how to know their ages aswell by their teeth, as otherwise. Chap. iiii.

SIth it is naturallie giuen to euerie beast for the most part to ingender with his like, aswel in conditions as in shape of bodie, it is verie requisit therefore for him that would haue a good race, to be very circumspect in chusing the first Stallions and Mares, from whom he would haue his race to descend, to the intent he may reape thereof both pleasure and profite, and not bestow his cost and labour in vaine. In chosing then a Stallion, three things (as me thinkes) are chiefly to be considered: that is, his beautie, his goodnesse, and his age. And first as touching his beautie, it consisteth onlie in colour and shape, of which two thinges, because I haue alreadie according to Grisons opinion sufficientlie treated in the booke of the art of Riding, I shall not nede therefore nowe to trouble you with many words, but onlie to make as it were a briefe recitall of the same. Of all colours then these be the best, the browne Bay, the dapple Gray, the bright Bay, the Rone, the white Liard, the pure Black with a white starre in his forehead. And in any wise let the Stallion be all of one colour, and that very cleare and bright, and not pied or of diuers colours, albeit to haue some white or blacke marke in place conuenient, is very beautifull, as to haue a white starre in his forehead, or the outermost parts of his bodie black, as the tippes of his eares, his maine, or his taile, or else some of his féete to be white, according as his colour doth most properlie require, of which things we haue talked at large in the Booke of riding. Nowe as touching his shape it woulde be in this sort, let him haue a short and slender hed, a wide mouth & wide nostriles, slender lawes, great eies and blacke, bolting outwarde, and not hollowe inward, short eares & sharp pointed like a mouse, a neck rather long than short, great towards his breast, slender toward his head, the creast whereof woulde be rising in the middes, and therewith neither to thicke nor too thin, hauing a crispe maine,

and

and hanging naturallie on the right ſide, a brode breaſt, and full of apparant muſcles, or brawnes of fleſh, alſo broade ſhoulders, a large bulke and gant bellie, a ſtreight and ſharp pointed withers, a ſhort and plaine backe, great round buttockes, a long and buſhie taile, a yard and ſtones of mean aſſiſe, one ſtone not hanging ſider than another, but truſſed vp round together, large thighes, and long hanches behinde, ſtrong legs and great ioints, as well before as behind, ſhort paſternes, with long fewterlockes, alſo round, ſmoth, blacke, harde, hollow and ſounding houes: and finallie, let his whole bodie togither, haue roundneſſe according to his length, and be in all points ſo well proportioned, as he may ſéeme both high of ſtature, ſtrong of limme, and alſo liuelie to the eie. Thus much of his ſhape, and now of his goodneſſe. His goodneſſe may be partlie naturall, and partlie artificiall, neither of which can be throughlie knowne but by his doinges. His naturall goodneſſe chieflie conſiſteth in his healthfulneſſe of bodie, in aboundance of good ſéede, in his ſtrength, agilitie, ſwiftneſſe, good diſpoſition, and aptneſſe to be taught: yea, and in his pace, galloping, running, bearing of his head and eares, all which thinges may be alſo much holpen by art. But to reine well, to beare his head ſteddilie, to be readie of turne, and light of ſtop, to handle his féete orderlie, to kéepe his ground, and to obeie his riders will at all aſſaies: proceedeth rather of Art than of Nature, which artificiall goodneſſe, whether he hath or not, the booke of riding doth plainelie teach you howe to iudge. Albeit for a Stallion which ſhould chieflie ſerue to couer mares, ſuch artificial goodneſſe is not ſo materiall as the naturall good thinges before mentioned, amongſt the which there is one chiefe point, and yet cannot perfectlie be knowne, vnleſſe you might ſée him to couer a mare, and that is to wéete, whether his ſéede be good or not, which at that time may verie well be knowne in this ſort. Take of it betwirt your thumbe and your finger, or in a locke of woll, and if in your féeling and towſling of the woll it ſeemeth to bee firme, faſt and ſlimie, it is good: but if it be ouer liquid or waterish, it is naught: and if the Horſe be ſlow in couering, or doth it not with a liuelie ſpirit & courage, or hath but one ſtone, or great warts growing on his ſtones, or haue naturally any white ſpeck

in

in anie of his eies, hee is not meete to bee a Stallion: for all the Coltes that he shall beget will haue the like defects. Wherfore so nigh as you can let your Stallion be without all faults. Now as touching the age of the Stallion, although most men in these our daies make no matter therof, because he may get foles vntil he be xx. or xxx. yéeres old: yea and so long as he liueth, so that he be holpen: and therfore in most places of this Realme, they appoint no horses to that vse, but such as be verie olde, and therwith perhaps both lame & blind. Yet the men in the old time made a great matter therof, and allowed no stallion to be verie good but from v. yeares to xiiii. affirming that as one perfect thing doth bring forth another perfect; so that which is vnperfect bringeth forth his like. And as a Horse is accounted vnperfect, vntill he be v. yéeres olde, for that his iointes before that time be not throughlie knit, neither is he growne to his full strength: so that at xiiii. yéers he beginneth againe to ware vnperfect, because that nature in him by that time is sore decated, insomuch as decrepite age and death it selfe by nature, doeth then shortlie followe after. Albeit I will not denie, but that good kéeping and a strong complexion may cause one horse to continue in lust and courage much longer than another. For Albertus writeth that hee knew a souldiour, which serued in the field on a horse that was 70. yéeres old, and yet was accounted an able horse. Niphus also saieth, that the Emperor Ferdinandus the first, hadde in his stable a Horse that was 70. yeares old. And I my selfe haue séene Stallions that haue been xx. yeeres old and aboue, that haue gotten verie faire colts to the eie. And yet I beléeue not like in perfection to those that the same stallion might haue gotten in his more lustie age: for the Colts of olde Stallions for the most part, be dull and slowe, and haue tender hoofes, and are more subiect to diseases and forfeites than others. Wherefore I woulde wishe all you that woulde haue a perfect race, not to admit anie horse to be your Stallion, that is, as I said before, vnder v. or much aboue xiiii. vnlesse he be verie lustie and strong, and therwith be verie haile of bodie and lim. And whilest I talke heere of the horses age, it is méete that I shewe you also how to knowe the same. Some séeke to knowe a horses age in this sort, they pull his skinne with their hands from his

his flesh, holding it so a prettie while togither and then let it goe againe, marking whether the skinne returneth immediatlie to his place or not, without leauing any signe or wrinkle where it was touched, for then they iudge the horse to be young. But if the skin will not fall downe quicklie again of his owne accord, they take him to be old, and to lacke that naturall heate and warme blood which should nourish his outwarde parts. But most men vse to iudge a Horses age by his teeth, taking that to bee the moste certaine waie of knowledge, specially vntill he be full seuen years old and vpward: for euerie horse when he is two yeares old, doth cast his two former teeth, aswell aboue as beneath: and euerie yeare after vntill he be six yeares olde, he faileth not to cast other two in like maner. Then in the first yeare, those which he first cast be closed, but in the seuenth yeare all his teeth be fullie closed, so as the marke goeth cleane out, whereby a man should iudge his age. Notwithstanding, after the horse beginneth to enter into old age his temples will wax hollow, and the haire of his browes hore and white, his teeth also will bee greater and thicker in substance, fowler in colour, and one standing further out or higher than another, which they do not so long as the horse is yong, but stand euen and round togither. Thus much of the Stallion. Now let vs speake somewhat of the Mare, which would be also good in her doings, beautifull and yong. For as Absirtus saith, the mare that should be for breede would be of a comelie stature, and broad set, as wel behinde as before, and well knit togither, hauing a slender head and a large bodie, so as shee may be sightlie to the eie, and not to be lesse than three yeares olde nor much more than ten. Notwithstanding, some write that it maketh no matter though she be couered and do conceiue immediatly after that she be two yeares old and vpward, so that she be full three yeares old at hir foling. For the female kinde in all beasts, as they be colder of nature, so they come sooner to their perfection than the Male kind, and likewise decaie sooner: wherefore some hold opinion, that their foling after ten yéers of age is vnprofitable, affirming such colts to be naturally dul and slowe, albeit I haue séene Mares of xx. yeare olde and aboue, that haue brought forth verie faire and liuelie colts to the eie: yea Aristotle saieth that a Mare

may

may beare foles al hir life long. And also that she doth liue longer than a Horse, who as he saith, may liue vntill he be xxviii. but the Mare may liue till shee be xl. Affirming hir to be inclined to the act of generation as much as any beast liuing. Notwithstanding I would wish you to kéepe for bréed no Mare that is much aboue ten yeares, vnlesse you haue good experience of hir coltes, and be well assured of hir continuance in courage and lustinesse. And in any wise let your bréeding mares which you kéepe for studdes, be made so tame and domesticall as may be, so shall you not onlie easilie driue them and remoue them from place to place, but reap some commodity of their worke: which if it be moderate, it cannot hurt their teaming, whereas if they should be wild, they would be verie combrous to keep, yea and manie times through their rashnesse destroy the foles in their bellies, neither can you bring them to the Horse, nor take their foles from them, when you woulde weane them, without great trouble. At what age it is best to tame them, we shall shew you hereafter in his proper place.

At what time of the yeare it is best for Horses and Mares to ingender, and in what sort they ought to be put together. And how to know when a Mare desireth the Horse. Also how manie Mares one Stallion is able to couer in one yeare. Finally when the Stallions should be removed from them. Chap. v.

After that we haue taught you how to chuse both Stallion & Mare meet for bréed, it is requisite that we shew you now in what time of the year it is best to put them together that they may ingender, & what order is to be obserued therin. Most writers do affirme that the best time is the spring, or as *P*alladius saith, from the 22. of March, vntill the xvii. of June. Because the mare going a full yeare, or at the least 11. monethes and ten daies, shall by this meanes fole in such time of the yeare as grasse is most plentifull, whereby she shall haue the more aboundance of milke to féed hir fole, and the aire shall be so temperate, as the fole shal neither be parched with the hot sunne, nor pinched with cold weather. But forasmuch as our mares for the most part heere in Englande, goe not with fole aboue eleuen monethes, and also for that the coldnesse of the countrie will not

suffer

ſuffer the graſſe to ſpring and growe ſo ſone here as in Italie, or ſuch like hot countries, I would not wiſh the mares to be couered before the beginning of Maie, ſo ſhall the foles fall in Aprill, before which moneth there groweth but little graſſe. Againe, the mares of themſelues before Maie will haue but little luſte to the horſe, for fault of full bitts and warme weather, which ſhoulde ingender luſt. And yet as I ſaid before according to Ariſtotle, there is no kind of beaſt more inclined to that acte than the Horſe and mare, inſomuch as if they may not be ſuffered to ingender when luſt prouokes them, they will run mad. It is eaſie to know when they luſt, by their inordinat running and ſtinging here and there and that as ſome write, not toward the Eaſt or Weſt, but moſt commonlie toward the ſouth or North, ſetting the taile bolt vpright. Againe, one mare will woe another, and they will pille often. The time then of the yeare méete for generation being come, it is requiſit that theſe two beaſts be put togither, which you may do diuerſe maner of waies. The firſt and beſt waie, and ſpeciallie for him that hath manie mares and ſtallions, is to put euery one of his Stallions by himſelfe (being before reſted and well fed for the purpoſe) into a ſeuerall paſture full of graſſe, and well fenced with high pale or raile, as I ſaide before in the firſt chapter, in which paſtures woulde be either ſome good ſhade and ſhelter, to defend them from the ſunne and raine, or elſe ſome houſe or houell made of purpoſe, and ſo to let them run there from the beginning of Maie, vntil the middeſt of June, during which time, you may turne into euerie one of thoſe ſtallions ſo many mares as he is well able to couer, which abilitie is to bee meaſured by his youth, ſtrength, and luſtineſſe. For if he be yoong and luſtie, he may couer ix. or x. mares very wel, and if he be old and féeble, he had néede to couer the fewer: for to couer many is a great féebliſhing to the horſe, albeit in Italie, to a young horſe they will not let to appoint xii. or xv. Mares. And Ariſtotle ſaith, that a horſe may couer xxx. mares in one yeare. Alſo Herodotus writeth, that the King of Babilon, hauing (beſides his Horſes of ſeruice) eight hundreth Stallions, did appoint euerie yeare vnto thoſe Stallions ſixtéene thouſande mares, ſo that euerie ſtallion had for his ſingle ſhare twenty mares. Yea and ſome let not to write, that in

Syria, there was ſometime a race of rrr. thouſand mares, to whom were appointed but thrée hundred Stallions: ſo that euery horſe had to couer an hundred mares. Whereby it ſeemeth, that horſes in time paſt haue béene of a farre ſtronger nature than they be now in theſe our dates. But in any wiſe, when ye let the ſtallion and the mares thus run togither, haue alwaies a good eie to the fence that it be ſtrong & ſure, for feare that none of your own ſtallions or ſtrange horſes breake in, to diſturbe any of them: for they will fight togither in ſuch time moſt cruelly. Neither is ther any beaſt more gelious of his mate, than the Horſe is of his wiues (if it be lawfull ſo to tearme them) inſomuch as hee will not ſuffer them to léede out of his ſight, nor to ſtray one from another, but will kéepe them alwaies togither, and nigh vnto himſelfe, which running and kéeping togither, bréedes ſuch a mutuall loue betwixt them, as thereby they are on both ſides the more inclined to generation. And the mares by this meanes doe more naturallie, more ſpeedilie, and alſo more eaſilie conceiue, than if they ſhould be ſerued out of a ſtable: for there many times, often that be ſerued, ſtue doe not take: of which kind of ſeruing, I will ſpeake in the next chapter following. Notwithſtanding, ſo ſoone as the mares haue all conceiued, which you ſhall know by ſuche meanes as ſhall be ſhewed you hereafter, I would wiſhe you to remoue the ſtallions from them, and not to ſuffer them to runne with the mares all the yeare as ſome doe, for that is not good, for two conſiderations. For firſt you ſhuld loſe the vſe of your horſe which being after couering time ſomewhat reſted, and well meated, may ſerue you in your other affaires: ſecondlie, it will bee very dangerous for the mares that bee with fole: for Ariſtotle ſaieth, there be thrée kindes of beaſts more letcherous than all others: that is to ſaie, the Hare, the Sowe, and the thirde I dare not name for feare of offending: for whereas all other beaſtes when they be with yong will abſtaine from the act of generation, theſe thrée kinds (as he ſaith) doe not refuſe it euen in that time. And though the mares doe refuſe it, as moſt commonlie they will, whatſoeuer Ariſtotle ſaith, yet the horſe perhaps when prouender pricketh him will force them, and perchance by ſtriuing with them, make them to caſt their fales: wherefore I can in no

wiſe

wise consent that they should run all the yeare together, but only vntill such times as the mares haue conceiued. Thus much for great races, whereas bee many mares and stallions: for those that keepe but one stallion and a fewe mares, doe like better to haue their mares seuerallie serued one after another, then to run altogither with the stallion, affirming that by this meanes the Stallion shall not beat himselfe so much, nor spende more seede vpon one mare then vpon another: and for this purpose a verie small portion of ground might serue to keep the stallion, so that it be a batling ground full of grasse and well fenced with highe pale or raile, as some large Orchard or Pondyarde, nighe vnto the mansion house, of which kinde of grounded, as I haue seene diuers, so did I neuer see ante that pleased me better, than one which I sawe in Darbie shire, in a towne nigh vnto Darby, called Marketon, whereas a verie honest Gentleman and a good housholder, named maister Pondale dwelleth, whoe keepeth a good strong stallion, and halfe a dozen faire mares, whose Colts doe proue verie well, whereof your Lordshippe hath one called Markam, so named according to the name of his olde maister, maister Thomas Markam of Mierton, which horse as he is indifferent wel proportioned, so was he once made by Abraham, maister Atticis man, as readie a horse in all points, as any was then about the Court. The peece of grounde which I liked so well at this Gentlemans house, was a Pond-yarde, enuironed rounde about with a high and strong pale, and also with a verie thicke quickset without the pale, the quantitie of which ground, the ponds deducted, is scant three acres, but the qualitie and goodnesse thereof is such, as it doth not onlie keepe his stallion all the Summer, that is to saie, from the midst of Aprill vntill Halontide (before which time he doth not take him in, vnles it be betwixt whiles to worke him, as in harnest time, and so to put him forth againe) but also two milch kine, and xx. sheepe (as he saith) all the yeare long, besides the feeding of his mares whiles they tarrie with the stallion to be couered, whereof euerie one comming seuerallie one after another, tarieth three daies with him at the least, & then be turned into a parke which he hath hard by, the ground whereof is verie meet for that purpose: neither doth he bestowe any pa-

nender on his Stallion, during the couering time: for to ſaie the truth, he is full fed with ſwift graſſe, as he hath no neede thereof. And in mine opinion there lacketh nothing, but ſome little houell or houſe to bee placed in ſome meete corner for the Stallion to ſhrowd himſelfe therein in the heate of the daie, and when it raineth: for the hot ſunne, or piercing raine, doeth greatlie feebliſh a horſes backe. Thus much I thought good to write of this peece of ground, to the intent that euery man minding to haue a race, might incloſe a like peece of grounde in quantitie at the leaſt, though not altogither in qualitie, to keepe his ſtallion in the ſummer ſeaſon, the commoditie whereof in ſhort time will counteruaile the charges.

What order is to bee obſerued touching the couering of Mares, when the Stallions do not run with them in the paſtures, but are kept in the ſtable. And how the ſame Stallions ſhould be fed. Alſo at what time of the day the Mares ought then to bee couered, and finally how to know whether they haue conceiued or not. Cap. vi.

But if ye haue no ſuch ſeuerall ground as is both able to feed your ſtallion and Mares during the couering time, as alſo to keepe them from breaking out: then you may keepe your ſtallion ſtill in the ſtable & bring the mares thither to be couered, which is a more chargeable and troblous way of couering, than the other before mentioned. For firſt your ſtallion againſt that time muſt be well fed with ſweete hay & prouender: yea rather during the couering time with ſweet graſſe if it may be gotten, & his prouender as ſome write, would be either dried wheate, or dried peaſe mingled with wheate bran, or elſe fitches, which be much praiſed of all authors to be giuen in that time, and now and then hee muſt haue a good maſh made of water and wheat meale, and that ſhall be to make him luſty. Alſo he may not be laboured by the ſpace of ſix weekes or two months before, but ſuffered to reſt, and yet I meane not to reſt altogither without ante kinde of exerciſe, but rather to be ridden now and then moderatlie to get him a ſtomache to his meat. For as ouer much labor dryeth vp his moiſtneſſe, and maketh his ſpirits and

power

power feeble: so ouermuch rest and fatnesse breedeth superfluous humours, which on the other side will as much weaken him, by quenching his naturall heate, and cause his séede to be colde and moist, which seldome or neuer taketh, or if it take, it ingendreth rather females then males, but moderat exercise preserueth his naturall heat, and sweet nourishing foode increaseth good bloud, and causeth his séed to be perfect, that is to saie, hot and moist, and in substance neither too much nor too little, too thick nor too thin, but in a mean, and that is best and will soonest take. The lesse he drinketh when he hath to couer any mare, the better: for if hee drinke ouermuch, it will put his winde in ieopardie. Moreouer, behind your stable, or else behinde some other house not farre from your stable, would be some pretie close yarde or court made of purpose into the which your mare would be first brought, and that verie earlie in the morning when the Sunne riseth, or else in the Euening at the sunne going down. For those two times are thought by the writers most méet for generation, and will doe the Horse lesse hurt than to couer in the heate of the date. Albeit Aristotle saith, that the mare for hir part is more desirous to be couered about the midday, because perhaps she being the colder beast of the twaine, heate doth then most chéeflie prouoke hir lust. Well, the mare then being thus brought in, ye may cause your horsekéeper to bring forth your stallion, who if he hath béene well fed, and moderatelie exercised, as I saied before, so soon as he séeth and smelleth the mare, he will immediatlie fetch three or foure saults, and bound aloft with all foure for ioye, euen in your Horsekéepers hand, who must not be afraid, but rather readie to helpe the Horse in his businesse, so soone as he shall leape the mare, by putting his yard with his hand into the right place, whereby the mare shall be the more spéedilie, the more easilie, and also the more substantiallie serued, by meanes that the horse shall spend no labour in vaine, nor waste any part of his séede. And after that the mare hath béene couered once, let your Horsekéeper lead the stallion a little aside, and walke him a while faire and softlie behind some house or wall clean out of hir sight to breath him. And when he is well breathed bring him in again, and let him couer the mare the second time, and then lead him out againe, and so the thirde time

if ye will, continuing to do this euery euening and morning the space of two or three daies vntill you thinke that she be sped. Betwixt which times, see that your horse be well rubbed and fed, and to the intent that the mare cast not out the seede which she receiueth, it shall not be amisse in the ende of euery last couering, immediatlie to bestow one pale of water on the reines of hir back, and to cast another into her taile, and that shall make hir to hold. You shall know whether shee hath conceiued or not, as Absirtus saith, best within ten daies next following. For if you offer the horse againe at ten daies end, and she refuseth, it is an euident signe of hir conception. Hir cote also (as Plinie saith) of what colour soeuer she be, will shew more ful and bright to the eie, immediatlie after conception, than it did before.

How to make your mares to conceiue either horse foles, or mare foles, and of what colour you list to haue your selfe. Chap. vii.

BVt now, whilst we are about the couering of mares, me think it were not amis, to shew you what pretie meanes sleights, men in the old time vsed, to haue colts of such kind & colour as they themselues haue desired. And first as touching the kind, Democritus affirmeth, that if ye tie the left stone of the Stallion with a threedden lace or point, or such like thing, he shall beget a horse fole, & if ye tie the right stone, he shall beget a mare fole. And this rule (as he saith) is general to al other beasts. Affricanus also saith, that if you cause your horse to leap ỹ mare when the wind bloweth in the North, he shall beget a horse fole, & if in the south, a mare fole. Againe some write, that if the mare be couered the third day before the full moon, she shal bring forth a horse fole, and if the third day after the full moone, a mare fole. And I take this to be a very good rule, and seldome to faile, and speciallie if the mare at that time haue latelie foled. Againe, some hold opinion, that if the mare be couered within fiue or sixe daies after her foling, and in the spring of the moone, that she shal bring forth a horse fole; and the rather if the horse bee suffered to vew hir, & to stand in hir sight somewhat before he couer hir, which order, Mr. Garret lieutenant of the Gentlemen Pensioners, doth diligent-

diligentlie obserue, when he causeth his mares to be couered, who affirmeth, that in obseruing this rule, hee neuer failed to haue a horse colt at his pleasure, who I assure you is no lesse expert in breeding, then skilfull in riding, and therewith so desirous to haue good horses, as he letteth not to hire a great deale of ground, paieng by the yeare fortie pence for the acre, to feede his Mares and Colts, in which his doing methinkes he deserues much to be commended. But to know what kind the mare hath conceiued, the authors write, that if the horse after hee hath couered the mare come downe from hir back on the right side, it is a signe that she is conceiued with a horse sole, and if on the left side, with a mare sole. Now as touching the colour, they write that if the Stallion be clad with a couering of such colour as you desire the sole to be, at such time as he doth couer the mare, you shal haue your desire. Some again write, that it is better to die or stain the haire of the Stallion with such colour as you like best, and then to make him to continue in the mares sight whiles shee burneth in lust, before he leape hir, to the intent (as I take it) that the impression may be the more feruent. And as this saieng is grounded of a good natural reason, so it may be proued by a most true and vnfeined example recited in the Bible, in the 30. of Genesis. Whereas you may read how Iacob, after that Laban his maister and father in lawe, had giuen him in recompence of his seruice all the blacke lambs and speckled kids, that should come of the ewes and gotes which he kept, by putting straked rods in the sight and face of the ewes, when they went to ram, & of the she goates when they went to buck, made all the offspring of Labans flocke to be blacke and spotted: whereby in short space he became as riche in cattell, as Laban his father in law. For truely at the time of conception, all the powers of the beast are so open, and the matter it selfe so tender, as it is apt to receiue euerie light impression.

whether Mares should be forced to abide the horse, though they haue no lust or not, and how to make both horse and mare hauing no lust, to haue a lust to ingender. Also how to abate their lust if need require. Chap. viii.

IF the Mare will not suffer the horse to leape hir, some haue vsed (as both Varro and Plinie writeth) to force hir thereunto,

whether she will or not, by tieng her to a post set vp in the midst of such a close yard or court as is talked of before, which thing is vsed euen at this present daie at Tutburie, whereas the Queens Maiestie hath a race And though I knowe that some of them do conceiue and prosper well inough after it, yet I cannot praise it, because it is both dangerous, and also vnnaturall: for the act of generation ought to be with pleasure and not with pain, neither doth that which is painfullie conceiued, thriue for the most part so well as that which is conceiued with pleasure. Wherefore I woulde wish all men rather to follow Camerarius aduise, which is not to force her: but to make her first to desire the horse, by putting a little stoned nag vnto her, to woo hir foure or fiue daies before you would haue her couered, which nag would be so fettered, as he may not couer her, although she would perchance incline vnto him: which when you perceiue she doth, remoue the nag from hir, & put the Stallion vnto hir: so shall she stand still of hir own accord, and receiue the Stallion the more willinglie. But the readiest meanes to make a mare desire the horse, is (as Columella saith) to annoint the matrix with the iuice of a certain herbe called of him Scilla, and of Palladius, Squilla, which some of our Physicians do call a sea Onion, because it groweth as wel in the sea, as on the land, and hath a head or rote like an Onion. It is verie good also to rubbe her matrix with Netties, which as Rusius saith, will not onelie cause the mare to suffer the horse to leape her, but also to ingender with him. Which otherwise manie times perhaps she cannot doe for want of naturall heate in hir matrix. Againe, Anatolius saith, that to anoint her matrix with hens dung and Turpentine mingled togither, will marueilouslie prouoke hir lust. But if you see that your horse hath no lust to ingender, then make as though you would driue away the mare from him, and that will make him more desirous of hir. It is good also to wipe the matrix of that mare which desireth the Horse with a spunge, & to put that to the Stallions nose, the sauour whereof will prouoke his courage. Also the pestill of a stag being burned and made into fine powder, and put into strong wine, will prouoke his courage, if his yard and stones be washed therwith. But I haue bin taught by men of experience, that if a good quantitie

title of the powder aforesaid, together with these powders following, that is of Annisseeds, of a roote called Satirion, and of Basil, of each like quantitie, be giuen the horse to drinke in a warme mashe made of water and wheaten meale, the night before you would haue him to couer anie mare: it will not onelie prouoke his courage, but also make his seed of such force, as it will holde & not quaile. And the lesse that either Horse or mare drinketh whilest they attend to generation, the better it shall be for them: for ouermuch drinke will not onelie make the seede thin and waterie, and so as it shal not hold, but also as I said before, make the Horse purse: yea and put his wind in ieopardie. But if you see, that after the time of couering, the stallion continueth stil too full of lust and courage, then it shall be good to anoint his stones with a little salet oile, and that will abate his courage, and the soner if you steepe a little lettice in the oile somewhat before. The same medicine also will abate a mares courage, if her matrix bee annointed therewith. And some write, that the cutting of her maine doth abate her courage. These medicines perhaps will offend the delicate eares of some persons that are more nise than wise. But I trust the discreet man will not be offended to heare them: but rather learne discretlie to vse them as neede shall require. For I assure you they were no fooles that wrote them, but learned, wise, and men of great experience.

Which Mares should be couered euery yeare, and which not. And how to doe, that those Mares that you would haue to beare euery yeare, shall not go barren. Cap. ix.

PAlladius and Columella would haue those mares that be very beautifull and faire, and therewith haue not onlie beene wel horsed, but also haue horse foles sucking on them not to be couered euery year, but euery second yeare, or rather third yeere, to the intent that their Foles may suck the longer time, & also be fed with the more pure milk. And as for al other mares, they would haue them to beare euery yeere, and to be couered againe so soone as their foles are v. or vi. daies old, so that they be in good lust, and not too poore. And to the intent

intent, that none such should go barren, it shall be necessary not onlie to instruct them, by such waies as haue been shewed you before, to the Horse in the spring time, but also about Lammas or in the beginning of August, and to suffer a Stallion to run with them three weekes or a moneth, to the intent that if any of them chanceth not to conceiue at the first couering, they may now be serued. But be sure that some one of the mares be ready to be couered, when you turne the Stallion into them, least perhaps he beat all vnel those that be with fole as the others, & so do more harm than good. And by vsing this order you shall bee sure to keepe no mare barren all the yeare, vnlesse the mare be barren by meanes of some sickenesse. Wherof I shall treate hereafter when I come to the diseases of horses, & there shew you how to cure the same.

How Mares should be vsed after they haue conceiued and are with fole, and what causeth them to cast their foles before their time. Chap. 5.

After that your mares haue conceiued, you musse beware you labour them not ouermuch, and specially that they beare no heauie burdens, for feare of killing their foles in their bellies. Also you must see that whiles summer lasteth they go in a good pasture, not hauing ouer rank grass but short and sweet, and that they lack no good water. And in winter when the grasse faileth, that they be fed with sweet hay, & that they lie drie and warme in some bushie close, wode or groue, or else vnder some hoell, but so as they be not scanted of rome, nor thronged vp together: for that is dangerous, & may cause aborsement, that is to say, to cast their foles before their time. Anatolius also saith, that the change of strange pasture or water, will cause aborsement. Againe, Rusius saith, that if they chance to eat the mast of Cerre trees, they shall be in danger of aborsement. Or if any of them be couered with an asse after that she hath conceiued by a Horse, or chance to treade vpon a Wolfe, or where a Wolfe hath troden, it will cause her to cast her fole. Also all stinking sauours, as the snuffing of candles, or Torches, or such like, will cause aborsement, as some authors write, aswell in mares, as in women. Wherefore all such things would be foreseen, and in any

case

eaſe kéepe your mares whileſt they go with fole, neither to leane nor yet to fat, but in good plight: for if they be to lean, they will either caſt their foles, or elſe bring forth ſtarwlings. Againe, if they be to fat, euerie place of their bodies will be ſo filled, as the foles within their bellies cannot haue rome ſufficient to growe and to proſper: by means wherof, either the foles ſhall be but litle ones, or elſe the mares themſelues ſhall be in great danger, at the time of their foling, by reaſon that their condits be ouer much ſtraight ned with fat. And therefore the Scythians, which is a people of the North, vſed (as Ariſtotle writeth) moderatly to iourney, & to trauell their mares after they were quickned, to the intent that they might haue the eaſier foling. For truely, moderate labour and exerciſe at that time, muſt néeds do them much good. But to trauell them immediatlie vppon conception, or when they bee verie great and ready to fole, is dangerous. For the fruit of the wombe in all beaſts, may well be compared to the fruit of the apple tré, which at the firſt blooſoming, and alſo when it is throughripe, and mellow, will be blowne downe with euerie light winde, but in the middle time betwixt both, it cleaueth ſo faſt vnto the branches of the tré, as it will ſcant be throwne downe with cudgels.

How to helpe a Mare that is in danger at the time of hir foling, and how you ſhall cauſe hir to expell her ſecundine or cleane. Chap. xi.

But if it ſo happen, that a mare by any miſchance, bee in danger at the time of hir foling, then it is néedfull to helpe her, cauſing one to hold her noſtrilles in a gentle maner, cloſe in his hand, and ſo to ſtop her breath, and it ſhall make hir to fole with more eaſe, and alſo the ſooner, which is not verie painefull for anie man to doe, for ſomuche as the mare foleth ſtanding, whereby he ſhall not néede greatlie to ſtoupe. Againe, if the ſecundine, which is the ſkinne wherein the Fole is wrapped, doeth not come all out naturallie of the owne accorde, then vſe this remedie. Take a good vnfull or two of Fenell and boile it in water, then take halfe a pint of that, and another halfe pint of olde wine, and put thereunto a fourth part of oile, and mingle them altogither ouer the fire, and being but luke warme, powre it into

the

the mares noſtrils, and hold hir noſtrils cloſe with your hande, to keepe it in a pyatie while after. And that ſhall force the ſecundine to come forth which for the moſt part, both ſhe and all other beaſts doe immediatlie eate and ſwallowe vp againe into their bellies. Which thing the plaine folkes of the country (if they can preuent it) will not ſuffer their milche kine to doe in their time of caluing, ſaieng: that it will make them ſicke and vnluſtie. And truely I beléeue it doeth the mares no great good. Some authors writs, that when the Mare doeth eat vppe hir ſecundine or cleane, for ſo the plaine folkes terme it, ſhe ſnappeth away alſo with hir teeth, a certaine péece of fleſh growing like a figge vpon the foles forehead, called of the Greeks and Latines, Hippomanes. Of the vertue whereof in matters of loue, many monſterous tales by manie learned Authors are recited. Whereof I thinke it not good to make the vnlearned partners: and therefore I leaue to ſpeak of it any further.

How to make a Mare to caſt hir fole that is not worthy to be bred, or for ſome other needful cauſe. Chap. xii.

IF a faire mare in old time had bin couered with a foul roile, or had bin with fole out of ſeaſon, or at ſuch time perhaps as ſhe muſt run for ſome great wager, then they would vſe means to make hir caſt her fole before hir time, and that was done either by force of hand, or by medicin. For if the fole were ſo far growne that it had haire, they woulde cauſe one to thruſt his hande into the mares wombe, and to take the fole by the hed and to cruſh it in péeces. And if it had no haire, then they would deſtroy it with medicines not néedefull here to be written. Notwithſtanding, in mine opinion the ſureſt way (if greater cauſe do not otherwiſe require) were to tary till ſhe hath foled of hir owne kind, and then to kil the fole.

How mares ſhould be vſed after they haue foled. Alſo how long the foles ſhould ſucke, and how they ought to be vſed during their foleage, alſo how to harden their hokes. Chap. xiii.

IT is néedfull immediatlie after the mares haue foled, or rather a weeke or a fortnight before they bee readie to foale,

to

to put them into the warmeſt, ſweeteſt, and rankeſt paſture that you haue, to the intent they lieng warme and dry, and faring well, may haue plentie of milke to feede their foles. For nothing doth hinder the growth of the foles more than colde and penurie. Moreouer Anatolius ſaith, that it is very neceſſarie about two or three moneths after their foling, to chaſe them about the ground to and fro, or otherwiſe to exerciſe them with ſome moderate labour, to make their milk come down into their dugs. And to the intent that the foles may be faire and fat, al the writers with one conſent would haue them to ſuck two yeers, and ſpecially, if they be horſe foles: yea, ſome would haue them to ſucke till they offer to couer their Dammes, and leſſe than one yeer, though they be mare foles, none that euer I could heare or read of doth allowe. And yet here in England they will ſcant ſuffer them to ſucke ſixe moneths, but will weane them before they be ful halfe a year old, which truely I cannot commend: for though many of them doe proue to be great of bone and tall of ſtature, yet the pith within is not firm or ſound, neither can they be ſo ſtrong, ſo healthful, or liue ſo long as thoſe moſt commonly do, which ſuck a long time. For that ſweet and moſt naturall moiſture and nutriment, whereof they be depriued in their youth, will neuer be gotten againe ſo long as they liue. Wherfore I wiſh thoſe that ſeek to haue ſtrong and healthfull Colts, to let them ſucke one yeare at the leaſt. In old time, as it appeareth by Varro and Columella, they vſed for warmth ſake to houſe both mares & foles, vntil their foles were ten daies olde, and then to put them forth into the paſture. And when the foles are fiue moneths olde, they vſed now and then to bring them into the houſe, and there wold giue them ground barlie mingled with wheate bran, and ſuch other ſoft kinde of fode. And being a yeare old, they would giue them firmer prouender, as dried Barlie and bran, continuing ſo to doe, vntill they were two yeares olde. All which time the coltes alſo ſucked, and chiefly they did it to make them domeſticall and familiar, and partlie to make them fat and luſtie, and partlie again to acquaint them with all kind of meates, but therewith they would touch them or handle them ſo little as was poſſible, for feare of hindering their growth. And among the reſt of their diligent cares, in bringing

vp

vp this necessarie beast, they had a speciall regard to his hoofes, that they might be tough, firme & hard, and therefore whensoeuer they stood in the house, they would suffer no dung to remain any while by them, for feare of burning their hoofes. And if they saiwe they were any thing inclined to haue tender hoofes, they would make an ointment of the eares of Garlike, of Swines greafe, Goates greafe & brimstone, that had not bin tried in the fire, and so annoint their hoofes therwith, both without and within, which ointment did make their hoofes very tough and hard, and to that intent they would strowe stones vnder their féete, whereas they stode. Moreouer, when they fed abroad in the pasture, they would driue them vp to the highest and most stonie grounds, which as Rufsius saith, doth not onelie harden their hoofes, but also make them to haue strong legs, and to tread surely vpon the grounde. But as touching the hardening of hoofes, wee shall talke more thereof, when we come to treat of the diseases of horses.

How to know of what stature, making, and disposition the foles when they are new foled will be, when they come to age. Chap. xiiii.

THe foles that haue verie long legs, euen from their birth, doe proue most commonlie to be tall of stature, for the legs of al foure footed beasts, be almost so long at the first day of their birth, as they will be euer after. Again, those wil be both strongly and finely made, which in their very youth haue great bodies, and wel knit together, little heads, black eies, short and sharp eares, broade nostrils, wide mouthes, broad necks with good thick creastes, broad breasts, plaine backs, gant bellies, brawnie thighs, nimble knees that wil easilie bowe in their going, strong legs, short pasterns, round, hard, & hollow hoofes, so as they may sound againe when they treade vppon the grounde, and the harder and the fuller they treade vppon the ground, the better hoofes they seeme to haue. Now the signes of their disposition and courage, as Varro saith, be these, to be liuelie and stirring, not to be afraid of euery noise or sight, to run wantonlie before their fellowes, and to striue to be formost, also to offer to leape ouer euery hedge and dike, or to goe ouer a bridge, or

to

to paſſe the water: againe, if they will be quickilie ſtirred & therewith ſone pacified, it is a ſigne that they will be tractable, and eaſie to be broken in time to come.

Of the growth aswell of Mare colts, as Horſe colts, and how to know which will continue in goodneſſe, and liue longeſt. Chap. xv.

I think it good here alſo to let you vnderſtand the opinõs of the writers touching the groth aswel of mare foles as horſe foles: for although Horſe foles be faſhioned in their dams bellies ſoner than the mare foles, yet the mare foles beeing once foled, arriue to their full growth of heigth and length in fiue yeares, whereas the horſe foles be not at their full growth of heigth and length, before they bee full fiue yéeres olde, from which time forth as Ariſtotle ſaith, till they bee ten yeares olde they grow onlie in largenelle and thicknes. And Abſirtus ſaith, that thoſe which haue white or balde faces, doe not ware old ſo ſoone as others. Againe, the ſame Author ſaieth, that thoſe colts which haue tender hoofes, doe not continue in their vigor and ſtrength, aboue eight yeares after that they are at their full growth of heigth and length, neither are they meet any more to be iourneied: bicauſe the crowns of their hoofes will fall downe ſo lowe, as they ſhall ſcant be able to ſtand on their féete. But if they haue good hoofes, then they will continue in their vigor ten yéeres after their full growth and aboue. Moreouer, the ſaid Author ſaith, thoſe Horſes which haue from their youth vpward hard hoofes will liue vntill they be eight and twentie, or nine and twentie yeares old, but they ſeldome arriue to thirtie: but thoſe that haue ſoft hoofes do not liue aboue foure and twentie yeares. But as touching the liues of horſes we haue talked alreadie ſufficientlie before in the fourth chapter.

When and how Colts ſhould be weamed from their Dammes, And how they ſhould be ſeuered according to their kinds and ages. Chap. xvi.

When your colts haue ſucked 11. yeares or one yeare at the leaſt, and ſpeciallie if they be horſe colts (for mare colts may ſucke a leſſer time, according as you your ſelfe ſhall thinke it good to haue your mares couered

againe the next yéere following or not) then about Shrouetide it is good (as some men write) three daies before the ful of the moone to take them earlie in the morning from their Dammes, and to shut them vp all that daie and all that night without meate, in a house appointed for that purpose, and standing cleane out of their Dammes hearing. The next daie in the morning to put them againe to their dammes, and to let them sucke their bellies full: yea euen vntill they swel againe, that done, take them awaie for a ful day, and to kéep them in the aforesaid house the space of fourtéene daies, nigh vnto which house would bee some prettie sweete pasture reserued of purpose to the intent that from the end of the fourtéene daies, vntil the moneth of May (before which time there is little grasse growing) the Colts may féed and also play themselues therein euerie faire daie. But when Maie is once come, then put them forth into some good pasture, whereas they may haue plentie of short and swéet grasse: for ouer ranke grasse will hurt their reines, and make them thicke necked, and in any case sée that therewith they lie warme and drie, and lacke no water, for if weanlings suffer either hunger, thirst, or colde, and specially in the first yeare when they mourne for their dammes, they will neuer prooue to be good, but will be small of stature, of small strength and ful of diseases. But after that the colts be two years old and vpward, and haue cleane forgotten their dames, I would wish them to runne in a large, hard, and hungry grounde, but so as with their trauelling and taking paines for their liuing, they may fil them full once in the daie at the least, for feare of hindering their growth. Your colts being thus weaned and kept, shal proue to be light, nimble, harde and strong horses, and to haue strong legges and harde hoofes, and not to surfet of euerie little colde, as those doe which be fedde in Summer season with ranke grasse, and lie colde and wet in Winter. Moreouer, to the intent there may be no disorder amongest your coltes: sée that ye seuer them according to their kindes and ages, that is to saie: to put horse foles by themselues in one pasture, and mare foles by themselues in another pasture. Againe, put yearlinges, two yearelings, and three yearlings, euery age by it selfe severallie, so shall not the greater wrong the lesser: for among equals is altogither

loue and fellowship without any discord. Wherefore you see that partitions as I said in the beginning of this booke, are so needful in that ground which should be appointed for breeding of horses, as nothing more.

Of the gelding of Colts, and for what cause they be gelt, and also at what age, and in what time of the yere they ought to be gelt. Chap. xvii.

The coltes that do naturally amble, or may easilie be brought to it, either by trauerse, or else by hande without trauerse (which in mine opinion is the better way) most men in this realm do more delight to haue them gelt than stoned, for they loue not only to ride easilie by the way, but also very fast, and therewith to haue their horses so quiet, as they may be easilie gouerned, which thinges are not commonlie seen in stoned horses: for their abundant heat will not suffer them to be so quiet, nor yet to labour so far in a day as Geldings may, because the Gelding lacking his stones hath no such hot blood in his bodie as he had before he lost them. Yea to be gelt (as some Authors write) is such a coler, as it taméth both man and beast, in their greatest madnesse, and cleane healeth them of that disease, when nothing else will. Moreouer, Geldinges do not neigh so often nor so lowde as stoned horses doe. For the which cause, the Sarmatians in all their secret enterprises and exploits, do vse to serue vpon Geldinges, and not vpon stoned horses. And also our light horsemen here in England doe in like maner serue vpon Geldinges in the warres, and for that cause they doe not onelie geld ambling coltes, but also trotting coltes, which they think partelie méete for that purpose, and partlie for their seruantes to ride on, and to carrie their males and clokebagges after them. Of both which sortes of Geldinges, I beléeue this realme hath so faire and so manie, as any one countrey in all Christendome. Wherefore I thinke it good here to shew you the age, and at what time of the yeare and Moone it is best to gelde such coltes. And first as touching the age, it is best doing when the colt is almost two yeares olde, for to gelde him ponger will hinder his growth verie muche. Againe, if he be much elder, his necke will ware

great, and the ſtrings of the ſtones will be ſo hard and ſtrong, as they will not be broken, but muſt needs be cut, which as Ruſsius ſaith, is very dangerous. Albeit our gelders here in Englande be ſo cunning and expert in that faculitie, as they make no matter thereof, for they will cut both olde and yong, at what age ſoeuer they be, and warrant them to doe well enough. And ſome I aſſure you doe euill enough, and ſpecialite if the meeteſt time for that purpoſe, as well of the yeare, as of the Mone bee not dulie obſerued. Wherefore I woulde wiſhe you to ſuffer none of the gelders to take your colts in hande, vnleſſe it be in the ſpring, as in Maie, or in the beginning of June, or elſe about the fall of the leafe, as alſo when the moone is in the wane. For thoſe two ſeaſons are moſt temperate, that is to ſaie, neither too hot nor too colde, the exceſſe of either of which qualities, is very noiſome to thoſe that be newlie gelt, and cauſeth manie to peake out of the way. And therefore after that they be gelt, you muſt ſee that they go in a warme paſture, and that they be not ouermuch chaſed too and fro or otherwiſe diſquieted, but moderatelie exerciſed vntil they be perfectlie whole.

At what age, and in what time of the yeare it is beſt taking vp of colts to breake them, and how they ought at the firſt haltering to be vſed and tamed. Chap. xviii.

They vſe in moſt parts to take vppe their colts when they are but two yeares and the vantage, or 3. years old at the moſt, wherby their ioints not being knit, if they be not the more diſcretly vſed, their backs may be ſone ſwaied or pinched, and beſides that, their legs will growe full of ſplents and wingalles, and become croked and lame, before they be halfe old. Wherefore I wiſh that according to Frederico the Emperours order, no horſe colt might be taken vp to be broken before that he were foure years old and the vantage, and that would be done in ſome colde ſeaſon of the yeare, when they may beſt endure to trauell, as about October, to the intent that after they haue beene broken in Winter ſeaſon, when extreame heat cannot annoy them, by driuing them into faint ſweats, they

may

may be suffered when spring time comes, and plentie of grasse is vpon the ground, to rest in the stable certaine daies, whilest they be scoured and fatted with grasse, and so to get vp their flesh that they lost whilest they were in breaking: of which scouring and fatting, we shall treate hereafter more at large, when we come to speak of the dieting of horses, for the preseruing of their health. In some places, as at Turberie, the Coltes are so wilde, as after they be driuen into a house, or strong pownde, they are faine to be snared with a snare made of a strong halter running through a ring of iron, and put vpon a long poale, and so cast about that Coltes necke which should bee taken vp, and strained so harde, as it may strangle him for the time, before they can fasten anie halter or collar vppon his head, which wildnesse partlie perhaps commeth, for that the ground is waste and wild for lacke of partitions, as I saide before in the first Chapter: but chiefly for that they be neuer housed, handled, nor made familiar with man in their youth, which is verie needefull, and was not omitted by the men of old time, as I shewed you before in the thirteenth Chapter, and for lacke thereof many a good Colt at his first taking vp through his owne striuing is vtterlie marred, and maimed for euer. Wherefore I wishe them to be made domesticall in their youth, in suche sort as is in the chapter before declared, so shall they not neede to bee forced by any such extreamitie when they should be taken vp: and the first collar or halter that you put on a Colts head, would be made (as Rusius saith) of wollen yarne, or else of Horse haire, and that verie grosse and broade brayded, to the intent it may not cut his head when hee striueth withall. Moreouer, vnto that halter would be fastned two strong reines, on each side one, that the Coltes head may bee fast tied vnto the manger on both sides, whereby hee shall not reare nor hurt his legges. And vntill he be somewhat gentle and tame, it shall bee needfull also to set another colte by him that is alreadie tamed, that his keeper may haue the safer accesse vnto him, whoe must vse all gentle meanes possible to win him, & shew him no maner of crueltie, vsing often to stroke his backe and necke with his hand, whereunto he shall bring him the sooner, if he let him eate no meate, but that which he shall be content gentlie to receiue at

his hande. But if the colt be ſo wilde and ſolen as he will not bee won by this kind of gentle handling, then the beſt remedie is, to kéepe him from ſléepe, hauing a candle burning all night in the ſtable, and to ouerwatch him, as they do which are wont to tame wild hawks. For hunger & watching wil tame the wildeſt beaſt that is. And for 3. or 4. daies after he is thus tamed let him not go out to drink, but make him to drink in the ſtable, and when he will ſuffer to be touched, then ſtroke all the other parts of his bodie, and ſpecially his legs, to the intent he may ſuffer to be curried, and that his kéeper may lift vp his féet, and knocke him firſte faire and ſoftlie with a ſtone vpon his hoofes, and then harder and harder, whereunto if he be often vſed, it ſhal make him very eaſy to be ſhod, and alſo when his kéeper leadeth him to water, let that tamed colt which ſtandeth with him, alwaies accompany him, going ſomewhat before him, to the intent that the other may follow and ſo learn to be led in hand, which once had, then bring him with faire meanes to ſuffer the Cauetſane or muſroll to be put on his head, and to be ſadled and girded, & vſe to leade him to water being ſo ſadled, to the intent it may not ſéeme ſtrange vnto him, neither within the houſe nor abroad. And when he is brought to this tameneſſe, then it ſhall be good to put a paire of ſoft paſterns on his foreféet, and alſo (as Ruſsius ſaieth) to tie one of his hinder féet with a woollen cord, ſo as he cannot much ſtirre any way, and that ſhall preſerue his legges (as he ſaith.) Nigh vnto which no dung muſt be ſuffered to lie, for feare of burning his hoofes, but ſée that he ſtand cleane, warme and dry, & that he be wel meated, often curried, and cloathed. And in any caſe let no ſhrewde boies or vnruly perſons come into the ſtable, to tickle or toy with him, or otherwiſe to fray him: for if he chance to get any euil propertie at the firſt, it will be verie hard euer after to bring him from it. And after that he is brought to ſuch paſſe, as he will ſuffer to be handled, haltered, ſadled, ſhod, and alſo to be led where a man will, then lette him be ridden, broken, and ſcholed, according to Griſons preceptes, declared vnto you in my Booke entituled the Art of Riding. But now as touching the mare colts, it were beſt to take them vp when they are two yeares olde, and the vantage, to the intent that they may bee handled and broken, either

by

by working them, or else by riding them moderatelie, but rather by working them vntill they be three yeares old, at which age, as I haue said before, they are most meet to be couered, & being made tame before, you shall haue the lesse trouble with them, at such time as you would haue them to be couered.

How and at what age a Colts mouth should be cut, or certaine of his teeth drawne, when the bit for fault thereof cannot haue his true resting place. Chap. xix.

OVr common breakers of Horses, when they chance vpon a colt that hath so narrowe a mouth, as it is not able to receiue a bit high inough, they vse to cut his mouth wider, in riding him with a very sharp square brake made of purpose, which is not good, for it maketh him euer after either to haue too tender or too hard a mouth, & for the most part, rather too hard than too tender, by means of the hard and corne flesh which afterwardes groweth on both sides of his mouth, where he was so raggedly torne, cut and galled. Wherfore it were much better to cause an expert horseleach to slit his mouth equallie on both sides with a sharpe knife or rasour so high as shall bee needfull, and then to seare it with a hot iron, and to heale it in such sort as the sides therof may grow no more together, but appeare to be a naturall mouth, and of that widenes euen from the colts birth: and before his mouth be perfectlie whole, I would wish him not to be ridden with any maner of bit at all, but only with a hed strain or muskroll. Yea in mine opinion it were so much the better, if his mouth were cut and healed vp again before he were taken vp to be broken, for the sooner it is done the lesser it shall be séene, so that it be not done while he sucketh, for then perhaps the soreneſſe of his mouth would let his sucking, and so hinder his growth. Now touching the drawing of certaine téeth which may also be a great impediment that the bit cannot haue his true resting place, you shall heare the very words of Laurentius Rusius writing in this sort. Because it is very hard: yea, & almost vnpossible (saith he) that a horse can haue a perfect good mouth, vnlesse the two tushes, and also other two called of him the plain téeth, and of vs the chéek téeth or wang teeth, be cleane pulled out (for after

that a horse is throughlie warmed, if he h: th the said téeth, his rider shall hardlie holde him) it is very requisite therefore that the foresaide foure téeth, that is to saie, on each side of his nether law two, after that the horse is three yeares and a halfe olde, be cleane drawne out by an expert hand with instrumentes méete for that purpose, so as his lawe may not be hurt, and so soone as they bee out, let the sore gumme be rubbed well with salt, somewhat brated or broken before, that done, see that his mouth be not touched for three daies after, loke also that the stable where hee standeth bee close shut, so as the winde may not annoy him, and vntill he bee whole, forget not euerie daie after that hee hath drunke, fierce to cleanse the sore places from such filthe as there remaineth of his meate, and then to rub it anew with salt as before: for such continuall rubbing with salt, will suffer no euill flesh there to growe, and if any do grow, then first scarifie the same with your nailes, and rub it againe with salt. Some vse to wash the sore place onelie with warme wine, and some ad thereunto both hony and pepper, and rub it after with salte, some againe wash it onelie with wine & honie, and put no salt. But trulie, if it were first washed with wine, and after rubbed with salt, it were so much the better. Moreouer, vntill the place be perfectlie whole, forget not whensoeuer you put anie bit in his mouth, to cleanse first the sore place, faire and softlie with your finger. Thus far Rusius hath spoken, whose words doe sound with good reason, and are confirmed by diuers learned Authors, albeit I my selfe neuer sawe horse téeth drawne in all my life, and yet I must needes confesse that I haue séene some horses, though not many, which haue had their tushes standing so high, as it hath séemed vnto me verie necessarie, either to drawe them, or else to file them hard downe to the gums, which some men take to be the surest waie for sauing the Horses lawe. Notwithstanding in mine opinion, the best waie (if the Horses mouth be not alreadie too wide) were to slitte his wicks higher, and to make rome for the bit that waie: but to saie the truth, fewe Coltes or none being well bred in this realme haue néede of either of them both, neither haue our coltes for the most part, any tushes come vppe at that age whereof Rusius talketh. And trulie I cannot but maruell at that he appoints two tushes

to

to be drawne on ech side of his nether iawe (if I vnderstand him aright) whereas euerie horse hath but one beneath, and another aboue: and I do no lesse marueil to read in Aristotle, that a horse should haue in all 44. téeth, sith I could neuer sée anie horse that had aboue 38. or 40. at the most.

Of the culling out of refuse Mares & Colts, and also of those that shoulde be reserued for the maintenance of the stocke. Chap. xx.

ALthough a man haue neuer so faire Stallions & mares, yet by some euill aspect of the planets, or else by some other vnhappie bichance, or by the negligence of the kéepers, the coltes do not alwaies come to such prowe as a man would haue them, and therefore I would wish the owner, though he dwell farre off, twice a yeare at the least to suruey his ground and al the cattell therin, to the intent that if there be any not méet to be kept, either for barrennes, for age, or for deformitie, they may be made away, and sold at those faires and markets which best serue to such purposes: yea, and if the cattell be wel vsed, his increase will be such, as once in 3. or 4. yeares after the first 3. years be past, he shall be fain either to sell or to giue away of the fairest that he hath: for otherwise his ground would be quickly surcharged, & not able to féed them. Albeit I would with him to sel or giue so, as he néed not to buy himselfe to maintaine his stocke, vnto which he must haue alwaies a speciall regard, in chusing out from time to time the fairest & largest bodied colts, as well of males as Females, that he can finde amongst the whole race, to be reserued for the maintenance of his stud or breed. For as I said in the beginning, vnlesse the parents be well chosen, the offspring can neuer be good. Moreouer, it is necessarie that such suruey be often made for the shifting of the Cattell, according as both kind and age of the cattell, & also the time of the yeare requireth, least otherwise perhaps they may be pinched both with cold, and penury, which be the greatest enemies that Coltes can haue. Againe, manie contagious sicknesses do often chance amongst this kind of cattel, at which time, if the infected be not remoued from the whole, the one infecteth the other, and so they die all.

For fault of which seuering, Sir Iohn Birron of Nottingham-

Shire, a verie good knight and a notable houſekéeper told me this laſt ſummer, that not long ſince, he loſte in one yeare, as manie mares and Coltes as were worth a thouſand marks. But to ſaie the truth in ſuch a contagious time, it is not onelie neceſſarie to ſeuer the ſicke from the whole: but alſo very néedfull that medicine be miniſtred aſwel to the whole, as to thoſe that be not to far gone, for the ſafegard of their liues, whereof I ſhall ſpeake hereafter more at large, when I come to treate of the curing of their diſeaſes: and in the meane time I ſhall deſire you to take all that which I haue hitherto written touching the breeding of horſes in good part, ſo ſhall I haue cauſe to think my labour well beſtowed.

FINIS.

To the Right Honourable and his singular good Lord, the Lord Robert Dudley Earle of Leicester, Baron of Denbigh, knight of the honourable order of the Garter, Maister of the Queenes Maiesties horses, and one of hir highnesse priuie Councell, *Thomas Blundeuill* wisheth perfect felicity.

IT is now (my singular good Lord) almost two yeers, sithens I determined with my selfe, to haue translated into our vulgar tongue the four bookes of Grison, treating in the Italian tongue, of the Art of Riding, & breaking great horses, and to haue giuen the same vnto your L. as my L. Burleigh, high Treasurer of Englande, can well testifie: who I thanke him of his Lordships goodnes, vouchsafed to perule my first draught, & misliked not y same. But after that I had translated two bookes therof, and saw to what incõuenience I was bound: hauing to follow so doubtfull phrases and maners of speaking, and so confuse an order of writing, as in my iudgement he vseth (being indeed a farre better doer than a writer) by meanes whereof he is constrained to make many repetitions of one thing, and to vse more wordes than need: I could not satisfie my selfe therwith. And therefore leauing to translate any further, I sought howe to bring so good a matter as that is, into a newe forme and better if it might bee, and thereby to make it the plainer, and also the briefer. In which my doing, I trust (if Grison himselfe were liuing) I should not offend him at all. For sith it was his intent to make other men partakers of his excellent knowledge in this Art, so necessarie to bee learned, and therefore of right to be published; it would not greeue him then to haue his meaning so plainely expressed in another tong, as the Readers might easilie vnderstand the same. Which whether I haue so done or not, I refer that to your L. iudgement, who hath no small skill, not only in both tongues, but also in the Art it selfe, wherein your H. is a chiefe Maister, aswell by knowledge as also by office, and therfore most meet to be both iudge and patrone of this booke. which if it shall please your H. to receiue with a willing hand, and seeme to allow my doing therein, by encouraging the Esquires and ri-

ders

ders of the Stable in breaking the Queenes Maiesties horses, sometimes to followe the instructions thereof (and the rather for that old Alexander their first maister, was himselfe as I vnderstand, sometime Grisons scholler) and so giue an Example to all others in like manner to followe the same: and specially now, whilest the Quenes Maiestie mindeth so graciously to prounde for the breeding and keeping of great horses. which no doubt should be to the great profiting of this our Common weale, in the most parts wherof, partly for lacke of Art, and partly for lacke of exercise, chiualry is sore decaied: I shall not only thinke my labour well bestowed, but also to haue receiued the greatest reward that I could possibly wish or desire. yea, and shall be incouraged thereby, to attempt hereafter som other thing of more weight, wherein I may shew my selfe thankfull to your L. for so curteously accepting this my labour and good will, which is, and shall be alwaies bent to do your H. such poore seruice as I can.

A chapter to the Reader, touching the order *obserued in this booke: verie necessary to be read* and well considered before he enter anie further.

EDeuouring my selfe gentle Reader for your better vnderstanding, to reduce Grisons Booke, which in the Italian toong doth treat of the Art of Riding, and of breaking great horses, into a more briefe and compendious waie of teaching, than hee to my iudgement hath therein obserued: I sought first to what end such labour was chiefly to be emploied vpon great horses. And I found, that either it was to make them horses of seruice, or else Horses of pleasure, called Stirers. Then I considered what thinges were inci-

incident to a horſe of ſeruice, & what to a horſe of pleaſure or Stirer: and of thoſe things which were common to them both, and which were appertaining to each one particularlie. And firſt I found that to a horſe of ſeruice belonged theſe chiefe points here following. That is to ſaie, to trot cleane and luſtilie, to ſtop light lie, to turn on both hands readilie, to gallop ſtrongly, to manege with ſingle turne ſurelie, and laſt of all to paſſe a cariere ſwiftly: and in all his doings, from the beginning to the ending, to reine well, & to beare his head ſtedilie. All which things are alſo common to the ſtirer, but then it is requiſite to the Stirer beſide all this, to learne to bound aloft with al four, and to yarke withall, to gallop the gallop gallyard, to fetch the capriole, to do the corvetti, and ſuch like kind of ſaltes. But yet this ſufficeth not, vnleſſe I might alſo knowe the higheſt meanes for a horſe to attaine to theſe feates, and what order was therein to bee obſerued, which whileſt I ſought, beholde the Riders office wholelie diſcouered, whereby I might well perceiue that vnles the Rider were firſt inſtructed in all thoſe thinges that appertained vnto his office, the horſe coulde neuer be well broken. Wherefore minding to comprehend all things in three bookes, I thought it moſt meet to begin with the Rider, in teaching him firſt how to knowe a good Horſe, and apt to be taught, aſwell by his colour and markes, as ſhape, to the intent he beſtow not his labor vpon a Jade or Roſſe: then how to tame him, and to make him ſo gentle as he may ſuffer to be ridden: after that, howe to ſit him, and to behaue himſelfe in that point like a horſeman. Then I proceeded further, declaring the three chiefe pointes, wherein the perfection of a horſeman conſiſteth: that is to ſaie, in knowing how to helpe, to correct, and to cheriſhe his horſe, and with what inſtrumentes and generallie how and when to vſe them, and ſo I end the firſt booke: that done, I come to the horſes leſſons which he hath to learne for his part, declaring what order is to be kept therein: to which ſoeuer of theſe two ends beforeſaid he be broken. And to euery leſſon I ioine ſuch helps and corrections, as are meet to be vſed for redreſſe of ſuch faultes, as moſt commonly chance therein: which faults for the moſt part I call errours, making a diſtinction betweene errours and vices, attributing vices to the lacke of

knowe-

knowledge, & vices to nature, or euill custome. As these be vices, to be restife, to be rammage, to be downe in the water, to be skittish, which for distinction sake I do otherwise call general faults, because they may chance in euerie lesson. Of the most part of which faults, I do treate seuerallie in the thirde booke, declaring therewith the corrections of the same. For otherwise I should be driuen to make many digressions, and to interrupt the tenour of my talk, which I loue not to do. And I say heere of the most part, because there be some vices so peculiar and so incident to certain of the horses lessons, as I am forced to mingle the correction of the same, euen amongst the errors, as occasion requireth, and yet thereby no order broken at all, as any man of iudgement I am sure will easilie confesse. When the Horse being throughly broken in all pointes meete for him to learne, be hee horse of seruice, or Stirer: I finallie teach you how to ride him to the best shew before a Prince. And there ends the second booke. In the third book I treate onlie of the corrections of the generall vices aforesaide, and of the diuersitie of bits, and to what purpose euerie one serueth. The order of all which three bookes shall more plainelie appeare vnto you, by the contents of the Chapters hereafter following. And though Grison seemeth to vse the like order that I doe in the verie beginning: yet he doth not continue the same, but immediatlie maketh so many digressions, and interlaceth so many and diuers matters together, as were inough to confound the memorie of a very discréet Reader. And yet Grison not to be blamed, for not obseruing that order or method in writing, which perhaps he neuer had learned: but rather much to be praised and commended of all men, for uttering in the best maner he could, that his assured knowledge, which he had gotten with great labour and continuall exercising himselfe in riding, the space of xl. yeares and aboue. Of which knowledge what lacke wee Englishmen haue had, and speciallie haue at this present, is best seene at a muster, when the Quéenes Maiesty hath néed of horses & horsemen, where of tentimes you shall see some that sit on their horses like wind shaken réeds, handling their hands and legs like weauers. Or if the horseman be good, then the horse for his part shall be so broken, as when he is spurred to go forward, he wil go backward

ward: and when his Rider would haue him to turne on the right hand, he will turne cleane contrarie: and when he should stop, he will arme himselfe and run awaie, or else stop sooner than his Rider would haue him, or vse such like toyes. For redresse of which faults both in man and beast, this booke is chiefelie set forth, with the rules thereof, if you that lacke knowledge shall vouchsafe to acquaint your selues, not onlie by reading, but also by exercise of riding, I doubt not but by your speedy profiting therin, you shall haue iust occasion to bee thankfull, both to Grison for the first invention of the matter, and also to me for disposing and reducing the same into a plaine forme and order of teaching. And you shall haue very good cause also to be thankefull vnto my deare friend M. Iohn Ashlie, M. of the Queenes Maiesties Iewell house. For by the dailie practising of the rules of Grison his booke, I saiwe him, without the helpe of anie other teacher, bring two of his Horses, and speciallie that which he calleth his Galle, vnto such a perfection, as I beléeue seiwe Gentlemen in this Realme haue the like. Which euident proofe, togither with his incouraging me vnto it, made me the more willing to take the matter in hand, in hope that other men woulde with like diligence vse the like exercise, wishing al gentlemen lacking his qualities, to be his like in deede: and that not onlie in this exercise, but also in many other his vertuous exercises, as well of mind as of body: to the intent they may deserue as he doth, the loue, fauor, and commendation of all men, whereof I haue no doubt at all, because I my selfe doe knowe a number of young Gentlemen that be giuen in these our daies, to such ciuill and commendable exercises (as God giuing them grace to continue therein,) in time to come they will be no small ornament vnto this Realme. Which I pray God grant. And here I end, bidding you well to fare.

A Table declaring the contents of the *three bookes following. The first booke* treateth of the Riders office, and is di-*uided into these chapters.*

Of the coulours of horses, and which be best. Chap. 1
Which horses be well marked, & which be not. chap. 2
What shape a good horse ought to haue. chap. 3
How to tame a wild horse or colt, at what age, how to make him come to a blocke, and what kind of bridle, or rather halter and saddle, you shall first put vpon him. chap. 4
What the Rider ought to do before he take his horsebacke, and being mounted, how he ought to sit in his saddle. chap. 5
Of the three cheefe pointes wherein consisteth the perfection of a horseman, and howe many kindes of helpes and corrections there be. chap. 6
To what end such helpes and corrections serue. chap. 7
Of the voice of the tong, and sound of the lips. chap. 8
Of the rod. chap. 9
Of the bridle and reines. chap. 10
Of the calfes of the legs, and of the héeles. chap. 11
Of the stirrop. chap. 12
Of the spurre. chap. 13
Of the musroll and the martingale. chap. 14

The second Booke teacheth of the *Horses lessons, and is diuided into* these Chapters.

Of the horses lessons & order therof in generall. chap. 1
Of treading the ring, & to what end it serueth. chap. 2
The helps and corrections méete to be vsed whilest hée treadeth the rings, chap. 3
Of stopping. chap. 4
Of going backe, and whereto it serueth, and how you shall teach your horse to doe it. chap. 5

Of

Of aduancing before, whereto it serueth, and howe, where, and when you shall teach him to do it. Chap.vi.
Corrections to be vsed when your horse aduanceth too high, and out of order, or when you would not haue him. Chap.vii.
How to make him park, and to be light behind. Chap.viii.
How to teache your horse to turne readilie on both handes. Chap.ix.
How to correct your horse, when he is harder to turne on the one side then on the other. Chap.x.
Sixe other corrections for the same fault.
Of the whole turnes and double turnes, how and when to teache your horse to make them. Chap.xvii
Helpes and corrections méete to be vsed for the redresse of such errours, as moste commonlie doe happen in making the double turnes. Chap.xviii.
Of the Chambetta, what it is, whereto it serueth, and howe you shall teach your horse to do it. Chap.xix.
Of maneging, and howe manie kindes of maneges there bee Chap.xxi.
The order of maneging with halfe rest, whole rest, and without rest, all three with single turne, or halfe turne. Chap,xxii.
Of maneging with double turnes. Chap,xxii.
Of the helpes and corrections which are méete to be vsed for redresse of such errours and faultes, as commonly chance in maneging. Chap,xxiii.
How and when to teach your horse to passe a carriere. Chap,xxiiii.
Of the ordering of leaping and bounding aloft, and how & when you shall teach your horse to leape, and yarke withall, and also to gallop the gallop galliard. Chap,xxv.
How you shall teach your horse to do the Capriole, and to danse the Corruetti, and also to go sideling, either with his whole bodie, or with his rumpe onelie. Chap,xxvi.
How to ride a horse to the best shew before a Prince, and where best standing is for him to sée. Chap,xxvii.

The Table.

The third Booke treateth of the corrections of vices, and of the diuersitie of Bits, and is deuided into these Chapters following.

Of the corrections of vices in generall. Chap. i.

Of the vices of the head and necke, and first howe to correct your horse, when he beareth his head or necke awrie. Chap. ii.

How to correct your horse, when hee beareth not right the lower part of his head, called of the Italians, Mustacchio, and mate here called of vs, the Nosell, which comprehendeth both nose and mouth. Chap. iii.

Certaine causes, why it is better for a horse to beare his head vnder, then rightout, or to cast it vp aloft. And then how to correct him, if he will not bring in his head, and reane as he ought to doo. Chap. iiii.

How to correct your Horse when he ducketh downe his head, and beareth too lowe. Chap. v

How to correct that horse which doth ouerreach in his going, that is to saie, doth smite his forefete with his hinder feet. Chap. vi.

How to correct that horse, which when he is chastised for anie fault with the spurre, vseth to shake his head, or eares: also how to know by the mouing of his eares, when he is maliciously disposed, and how to correct him for the same. Chap. vii.

How to correct your horse when he whineth, intending to strike with his heeles, or to do some shrewdnesse, being in the companie of other horses. Chap. viii.

Of restifnesse, of the kinds and causes thereof. Chap. ix.

Remedies against restifnesse proceeding of vile courage. Chap. x.

Remedies against restifnesse proceeding of stubbornnesse, and stout courage. Chap. xi.

Other corrections to be vsed against restifnesse, when the Rider lacketh Art, and knoweth not by order of riding, how to get the maisterie of his horse, & make him to know his fault. Chap. xii

Of the contrarie vice vnto restifnesse, which is to runne awaie,

of the cauſes therof, and how to correct the ſame. Chap. xiii.
How to correct that horſe that will reare right vp when he is corrected for anie fault with a ſticke vpon the head. Chap. xiiii.
How to correct that horſe that will fall downe to the ground when he is a little wearie, or prouoked to doe anie thing which he would not willinglie doe. Chap. xv.
How to correct that horſe which paſſing through anie water, will lie downe in the ſame, & what is the cauſe of ſuch vice. Chap. xvi.
How to correct that horſe which is ſkittiſh or fearefull, and will ſtart at euerie thing, & whereof ſuch vice proceedeth. Chap. xvii.
How to imbolden your horſe, and to make him hardie againſt other horſes. Chap. xviiii
How to make your horſe to abide both ſtaffe, ſword, great noiſe, gunſhot, or anie other thing. Chap. xix.

Of the vices of the mouth, and cauſes thereof in generall. Chap. xx.
How to correct that horſe which will either draw vp the bit with his tongue, or defend the ſame with his neather lip. Chap. xxi.
How to correct that horſe which will mow or wry with his mouth and the cauſes whereof ſuch vice doth proceede. Chap. xxii.
Of the kindes of Bits, togither with their names and partes belonging to the ſame. Chap. xxiii.
Of the cheekes and eies of Bittes, and alſo of the Kirble, and how they ought to be made. Chap. xxiiii.
Of cloſe Bittes, and for what mouthes they are moſte meete, and alſo what vices they do correct. Chap. xxv.
Of open Bittes in generall. Chap. xxvi.
Of broken Bottes, and vpſet mouthes, how they ought to bee made, and what vices they do correct. Chap. xxvii.
Of whole Bottes howe they ought to be made, and what vices they doe correct. Chap. xxviii.
Of whole Bottes with trenches above, howe they ought to bee made, and for what mouthes they are moſt meete. Chap. xxix.

Examples recited by Grison aswell in his Preface, as in the *latter end of his booke, not onely commending the aptnesse of a* horse to learne, his stout caurage, and long continuance in his *goodnesse, but also the worthinesse of the art it selfe, whereunto is* also adioyned, who first found out Riding and who inuented the Bittes, and who first vsed the seruice of Horses in the field.

Aptnes to learne.

THere is a Citie within the kingdome of Naples, called Sibarie, in the which sometime horses did learne to danse at the sound of a Symphan.

Stout courage.

ALexander the great, had a horse called Bucephalus, which being decked in rotall ornaments, would suffer no man to ride on him, but king Alexander himselfe. Which horse being sore hurt at the taking of Thebes, would not suffer Alexander to leaue his backe, for to mount vpon anie other. Such was both his courage & also loue towards his maister, who did not forget to recompense the same. For when the horse died, the king caused him to be solemnlie buried: and for a perpetuall memory therof, builded euen there, in stead of a Sepulchre, a faire citie, and named it after the horses name, Bucephalia. Iulius Cæsar also had a Horse, which would suffer no man to take his back, but Cæser himselfe.

Long continuance.

KIng Charles the viii. departing out of Italie, onelie with fiue C. horsemen, encountered the Duke of Millain, being vnited with the Venetians, with Ferara, & with Mantua: and vntill he came vnto Furnouo, he knew none otherwise but that he was so strong as his enemies, which were in all, a thousand fiue hundred horsemen, whereof though the king was aduertised, & therwith heard all men saie, it was meet to giue place, & saue himselfe: yet he trusting in the great knowledge & valiantnesse of his horsemen, and spectallie of his generall called Il Signior Giouanni, Giacomo Friulzi, a Gentleman of Millan, would not so doe, but said: he would through, what soeuer became of it. And therefore hauing sent before his cariage (the spoile whereof brought manie of the grædie Italians into disorder) he himselfe being mounted vppon a great blacke Spanish Horse, which had but one eye, & was xviiii. yeares old,

old, followed with his band immediatly after, and gaue the onset, whereas both he and the horse did so valiantlie, as in that conflict there were slaine & taken on the contrary part xvii. of the chiefest conducters. Whereby his enimies being discomfited, he quietlie from thence passed on in his iournie: and the king would afterward manie times saie, that the valiant courage of his horse, was the occasion of that victorie. Which horse after that he came vnto the Citie of Molina, besides that he was no more trauelled, but well fed, and tenderlie kept, so long as he liued, hee was also solemnlie buried when he died, by the appointment of the Ladie of Burbon, sister vnto the king.

Another example of continuance.

When the great captain came to the exploit of the kingdom of Naples (the campe lieng then at Cerignola) it chanced that whilest the Vicerois of France, being there with manie Barons, prepared him selfe to fight with the Spaniardes. The nert day following, there came a knight of Naples called Il Signior Giacomo Guindazzo, who not hauing his Horses there went to Signior Troiano Caracciolo, Prince of Melfe, praieng him to lend him a Horse, onelie to serue in the field that daie. To whom the Prince being of his own nature verie courteous, & liberall withall, gaue him leaue to goe into his stable, and to take his choise of all the Horses there. Whereupon the said Giocomo went thither: and hauing viewed them all, chose out a great bate Horse, which latelie came from the couering of mares, and was xvii. yeares olde. And though the Prince perswaded him to take a yonger Horse, yet he being expert in that facultie, and knowing which Horses were best in deed, would not so do: neither was he deceiued in his choise. For the battell being fought the nert daie, the horse did his part notable well: insomuch, although hee were sore hurt, & had manie grieuous wounds, yet he would neuer giue ouer, but continue to the end, and therby saued his Riders life: so as both horse and man, after many valiant acts shewed, departed the field with the great admiration of all men that did behold them. And finallie, Grison attributeth so much honour and praise to a Horse, as he saith, that the worthie state of knighthode take his first beginning of this beast, which in the Italian tonge is called Cauallo:

and thereof commeth Cauilliero, which is so much to say in English, as a Horseman, or Knight. Wherein I beleeue, Grison tooke his example at the Latine word, hauing also like derivation. For a horse in Latine is called Equus, whereof is derived this worde Eques, that is a horseman, or knight. But then most commonlie they ioyne this word Auratus vnto it, saieng: Eques auratus, that is a golden knight: for that he was wont to weare gilt spurres, as I take it. Or else Eques torquatus, that is a chained knight, for that he weareth a chaine. With which kind of ornamentes, horsemen deseruing well in the field were sometime rewarded in signe of honour due to their vertue. And though in these daies rewarding of vertue beginneth to cease: yet the selfe same names of honour do still remaine.

The worthinesse of the Art.

MOreouer, to proue that the Art of riding and of breaking great horses, is no vile Art: Grison vseth the authoritie of the noble Poet Virgil, who in his Aeneidos, calleth king Picus for a more excellencie, and greater praise, a tamer or breaker of horses. He giueth also the like title in diuerse places of his booke to Mesaphus, the sonne of Neptune, the God of the sea, who (as Poets feine) begot vpon Medusa the winged Horse, named Pegasus, which flieng vp to the heauens, was transformed into those starres that be now called after his name. The Poets feine also, that Bellerophon the sonne of king Glaucus, was vpon this horse backe, when he slew the monstrous Chimera.

The first inuenters of Riding, and of Bits, and also of the seruing with Horses in the field.

THis Bellerophon, as some men saie, was the first that inuented Riding on horsebacke. And the Pellitrones a people of Lapithia, found out afterward the maner of bridles, bits, and ringes, to guide horses withall. But they of Thessalia were the first that vsed the seruice of horses in the warres, which as Grison saith, proceeded of a iudgement, no lesse profitable than diuine.

Thus end the examples of Grison.

The

the Art of Riding.

Of the colours of horses, and which be best Chapter 1.

A Horse for the most part is coloured, according as he is complexioned, & as he is complexioned, so is he also well or euill conditioned. Againe, he is complexioned according as he doth participate more or lesse of anie of the foure Elementes. For if he hath more of the earth than of the rest, he is melancholie, heauie, and faint hearted, and of colour a blacke, a russet, a bright, or darke dunne. But if hée hath more of the water, then he is flegmaticke, slowe, dull, and apt to lose flesh, and of colour most commonly milke white. If of the aire, then he is a sanguine, and therfore pleasant, nimble, and of the colour is most commonlie a baie. And if of the fire, then is he cholericke, and therfore light, hot, and fierie, a stirer, & seldome of anie great strength, and is woont to be of colour a bright sorrell. But when he doth participate of all the foure Elementes, equallie, and in due proportion, then is he perfect, and most commonlie shall be one of these colours following. That is to saie, a browne baie, a dapple graie, a blacke full of siluer haires, a black like a Moore, or a faire rone, which kind of horses are most commendable, most temperate, strongest, & of gentlest nature. And nert to these are such as be most like in colour to them: as the bright bay, the dark bay, that hath neither learing loke, mealie nose, nor white flanke: the bright sorrell, the sibitten white, the white liard like siluer, hauing his outtermost partes blacke, as the tips of his eares, his maine, his taile, or all foure feete: and if he hath a liske from his maine to his taile, he is so much the better. To these also maie bee added the ashie graie, hauing all his foure féet striped. And note this, that as all well coloured horses, are so much the better for hauing some signe of adustion, that is to say some black mark, at the least in their nethermost partes: so all euill coloured horses, those are best which haue their outermost partes black. But if he be a bright sorrell, a browne baie with red flanks, a perfect black,

as of anie other colour, betokening choler adust: then to mittigate his fiercenes, he had néed to haue some white marke. Wherefore sith good marks be as necessarie as good colours, I will treat of them particularlie in the next chapter following.

Which horses be well marked, and which be not. Chap. 2.

The horse that hath anie white marke, is called of the Italians Balzano, but speciallie when hee is white foted. And of white foted horses, there be foure good, and seuen bad.

The good be these.

The first is he that hath a white forefote on the farre side.

The second that hath a white hinderfote on the neare side.

The third that hath both his hinder feete white.

But note that such white must not mount aboue the pasternes, for that were an euill signe, betokening debilitie, and such horses be not called Balzani, but Calzati, which is so much to saie in English, as hosed.

The seuen bad.

The first is he that hath a white forefote on the neare side.

The second, that hath a white hinder fote on the farre side, and is called of the Italians, Arzeglio.

The third, that hath both his forefeete white.

The fourth, that hath his forefot and hinderfote both on the far side white, and is called of the Italians, Trauato, that is to saie, trauersed.

The fift, that hath his forefot and hinderfot both on the neare side white, and is likewise called Trauato.

The first, that hath his forefote on the neare side, and his hinder fote on the farre side crossewise both white, and is called of the Italians Traftrauato, crosse trauersed.

The seuenth, that hath his forefeete on the farre side, and his hinderfote on the neare side crosse wise both white, and is also called Traftrauato.

And note, that if anie of the white feete betokening either good or euill, be mingled or spent with blacke spottes, it confirmeth so much the more, the good or euill signification thereof. It is an excellent

cellent good marke also for a horse to haue a white starre in his forehead, or a white list or fillet, comming downe on his heade, without touching his browes, and not fullie arriuing to his nose.

The horse that hath a white rumpe or taile, is called of the Napolitans, Rapicano, and is most commonlie a good horse, but if he haue anie white therewith before, that signifieth him to bee of small force.

The horse that is flebitten onelie on the shoulders, or on the flankes, can neither be strong, nor able to endure anie hardnesse. For such a horse most commonlie is foled in the heate of Summer, betwixt Julie and August, when flies are stirring, from the stinging whereof he is not able to defend himselfe, neither with head nor taile, and therefore is called of the Italians, Attaffanato, that is, flieftong, or flie bitten.

And besides that his Damme can haue no plentie of milke to fede him with, the grasse being burnt vp with heate. The white Horse that is altogether blacke flebitten, or red flebitten, is a good horse.

But if he be a Liard, and marked with a few red or tawnie flebittings, onlie on his cheekes, or on his nose, that is a signe of a stobborne Jade and headstrong.

The whall eied horse called of the Itallians, Gazzo, is most commonlie wilie, and full of shrewd toyes.

The horse, whose balles of his eies are white, seeth not well in the time of snowe.

The horse that hath no kind of white marke, is most commonlie tractable, but then he is ramege, that is to saie, he will keep no iust pace in his going, but fareth as one that goeth with two minds, twixt going and not going.

And though to haue no white mark may chance to all colours: yet it chanceth most to the blacke and darke baie. And note, that when such blacknesse proceedeth of choler adust: the horse is furtious, bold and wilie, and is called of the Italians zaino. But if of melancholie naturall, then hee is fearefull, dull and slowe, which things are more easie to be knowne by his doinges, than by his markes.

The horse that hath an Ostrich feather either on his forehead,

on

or of ante other colour, betokening choler adust: then to mittigate his fiercenes, he had néed to haue some white marke. Wherefore sith good marks be as necessarie as good colours, I will treat of them particularlie in the next chapter following.

which horses be well marked, and which be not. Chap. 2.

The horse that hath ante white marke, is called of the Italians Balzano, but speciallie when hee is white foted. And of white foted horses, there be foure good, and seuen bad.

The good be these.

The first is he that hath a white forefote on the farre side.

The second that hath a white hinderfote on the neare side.

The third that hath both his hinder feete white.

But note that such white must not mount aboue the pasternes, for that were an euill signe, betokening debilitie, and such horses be not called Balzani, but Calzati, which is so much to saie in English, as hosed.

The seuen bad.

The first is he that hath a white forefote on the neare side.

The second, that hath a white hinder fote on the farre side, and is called of the Italians, Arzeglio.

The third, that hath both his forefeete white.

The fourth, that hath his forefot and hinderfote both on the far side white, and is called of the Italians, Trauato, that is to saie, trauersed.

The fift, that hath his forefot and hinderfot both on the neare side white, and is likewise called Trauato.

The first, that hath his forefote on the neare side, and his hinder fote on the farre side crossewise both white, and is called of the Italians Trastrauato, crosse trauersed.

The seuenth, that hath his forefeete on the farre side, and his hinderfote on the neare side crosse wise both white, and is also called Trastrauato.

And note, that if ante of the white feete betokening either good or euill, be mingled or spent with blacke spottes, it confirmeth so much the more, the good or euill signification thereof. It is an excellent

cellent good marke also for a horse to haue a white starre in his forehead, or a white liſt or fillet, comming downe on his heade, without touching his browes, and not fullie arriuing to his nose.

The horse that hath a white rumpe or taile, is called of the Napolitans, Rapicano, and is most commonlie a good horse, but if he haue anie white therewith before, that signifieth him to bee of small force.

The horse that is flebitten onelie on the shoulders, or on the flankes, can neither be strong, nor able to endure anie hardneſſe. For such a horse most commonlie is foled in the heate of Summer, betwirt Julie and August, when flies are sterring, from the stinging whereof he is not able to defend himselfe, neither with head nor taile, and therefore is called of the Italians, Attaffanato, that is, flieſtong, or flie bitten.

And besides that his Damme can haue no plentie of milke to fede him with, the grasse being burnt vp with heate. The white Horse that is altogther blacke flebitten, or red flebitten, is a good horse.

But if he be a Liard, and marked with a few red or tawnie flebittings, onlie on his cheekes, or on his nose, that is a signe of a stubborne Jade and headstrong.

The whall eied horse called of the Itallians, Gazzo, is most commonlie wilie, and full of shrewd toyes.

The horse, whose balles of his eies are white, seeth not well in the time of snowe.

The horse that hath no kind of white marke, is most commonlie tractable, but then he is ramege, that is to saie, he will keep no iuſt pace in his going, but gareth as one that goeth with two minds, twirt going and not going.

And though to haue no white mark may chance to all colours: yet it chanceth most to the blacke and darke baie. And note, that when such blackneſſe proceedeth of choler aduſt: the horse is furious, bold and wilie, and is called of the Italians zaino. But if of melancholie naturall, then bee is fearefull, dull and slowe, which things are more easie to be knowne by his doinges, than by his markes.

The horse that hath an Ostrich feather either on his forehead, on

on both sides of his maine, or on the one side, or els behind on his buttockes, or in anie place where he himselfe can not sée it, can neuer be euill horse.

But though the horse be neuer so well coloured and marked: yet is he little worth, vnlesse his shape be accordingly. And therefore I will shew you what shape a good horse ought to haue, beginning at his nether partes, whereon a good horseman ought first to fixe his eie and mind.

What shape a good horse ought to haue. Chap. iii.

A Good horse then would haue a blacke, smooth, drie, large, round, and hollow hoofe: and if it be soft or tender, and broad about the héele, it is the greater signe of lightnes. The reason is, for that the horse from the date of his foling, treadeth light vpon the ground: for he is afraid to trust to his hoofes, being as yet verie tender, and therefore straineth his fore legs, and his backe the more.

The crowines aboue his hoofes would be small and hearie.

His pasterns short, and that neither too low, nor yet too high, so shall he be strong beneath, and not apt to founder.

His ioints great, with long feawter lockes behinde, which is a signe of force.

His legs straight and broad.

His knées great, leane, and plaine.

His thighes full of sinewes, the bones whereof would be short, equall iust, and well proportioned, and the brawnes thereof, when he standeth with his legs together, muste bee much more distant one from another aboue towardes the breast, than beneath.

His shoulders long, large, and full of flesh.

His breast large, and round.

His necke rather long than short, great towards the breast, bending in the midst, and slender towardes the head.

His eares small, or rather sharp, standing right vp, being of a iust length and largenesse, according to the stature of the horse.

His forehead leane and large.

His eies, blacke and great.

The hollownesse of his browes well filled, shooting outward.

His

His lawes slender and leane.

His nostrils so open and puffed vp, as you maie see the rede within, apt to receiue aire.

His mouth great.

And finallie, his whole head together would be like a shéepes head.

His maine would be thin and long, albeit I do not mislike the opinion of those that would haue it to be thicke, so that it be not ouer thicke for as the thinnesse betokeneth aptnesse to be taught, so doth the indifferent thicknesse betoken strength.

His withers or walleis would not only be sharpe pointed, but also right and straight, so as a man maie plainlie see from thence the departure of his shoulders.

His backe would be short, and that neither rising nor falling but euen and plaine, so shall it be strong: which you shall soone trie, if you ride him.

For the horse that hath a strong backe, either in his going, or galloping, will continuallie gather his bodie round together, aduancing himselfe behind, and lifting vp his rumpe, which the Italians call Aggruppigigare: yea, and will doe the like whensoeuer you shall require it, or at the least will not shrinke or distend his backe, but will keepe it alwaies at one staie. Whereas if he hath a feeble backe, either he will go rolling behind: or els if he aduanceth himselfe for a while at the first setting forth, yet he is not able to continue withall. His sides would be long and large, with a small space betwixt the hindermost rib, and the hucklebone. His bellie long and great, but ouerlie hidden vnder his ribs.

His flankes not gant, but full, hauing naturall frézled haires growing on both sides, and the higher that such haires mount, the better.

His rumpe round and plaine, with the fall of a litle gutter, and with a large space betwixt the two hucklebones.

His thighes large and long, with bones well fashioned, and ful of flesh on either side. The hammes whereof, if they be leane, drie, and streight, and the houghes large and crooked like a Hart, it is a signe of swiftnesse. But if the hams be crooked, and the houghs straight, it is a signe that he is good for trauell.

His

His taile would be full of haires, & long downe to the ground, the truncheon therof must be of a measurable bignesse, and close couched betwixt his thighes: notwithstanding, some do saie that a thinne taile and crispe is as good.

His stones and yarde would be small: and finallie, all his members would be correspondent to the greatnesse of his bodie, which altogither would be fashioned much like a Stagge, somewhat lower before than behinde, but not overmuch, for that were dangerous in running. And the greater and stronger the Horse is, the meeter for the warre, and the lighter and more nimble hee be, the meeter to make a Stirer.

Thus having shewed you how to knowe a good horse, and apt to be taught, aswell by his colour and markes, as shape: it resteth now that I teach you how to breake him, and to handle him, and first, if he be wild, or a Colt, how to tame him.

How to tame a wild horse or colt, at what age, how to make him to come to a block, and what bridle and saddle you shal first put vpon him. Chap. viii.

ALthough you may begin to handle your horse when he is full two yeares old, and vpward, yet it were better to tarrie vntill he be three yeares and a halfe old, so shal he be the better able to endure trauell, the ioints of his body & legs being then somewhat knit together. For which cause the Emperour Frederico would not haue a horse to be ridden before he were full foure years old. And at the first handling of him you shall put on his head a certaine collar or halter, called of the Napolitans Cauazana, made in such sort as is hereafter expressed in the first figure of the third booke, which I caused to be cutte of purpose, because that Grison would in no wise haue a yong horse to be ridden at the first with anie bitte, for feare of marring his mouth. In stead of which Cauetsane, our riders in England vse a chaine not much vnlike in effect vnto the Cauetsane, but yet in my iudgement not so meete for a yong horse, for that it straineth the tender grissle of his nose too sore, which kinde of halter or Cauetsane, partlie for shortnesse of speach, and partly for likenesse of signification, I will call from henceforth a headstraine. And in

putting

putting the headstraine on, you must vse your horse so gently, as he maie not only be content to weare it, but also to be quietlie led thereby: whereunto with gentle handling you shall quicklie bring him. Neither must you vse any other kinde of bridle than this, or any other saddle for feare of hurting his backe, than a soft pad of straw, vntill your horse can trot cleane, keepe the ring, stoppe and turne roundlie on both handes. And in learning to sit close in the pad, you shall also sit close in your saddle, but whatsoever saddle you put vpon his backe, see that it stand alwaies more forward than backward, vnlesse the horse be ouerlowe before. For the more forward that the saddle doth stand, the Horseman shall sit therein the more right vp, and with the better grace. The horse then being thus brideled and sadled, cause him to bee brought forth to some blocke, whereas if hee will not stand still whilest you take his backe, then let him that bringeth him make much of him, sometime threaten him with his voice, and thrust him with his handes on the right side towards the blocke, whereupon you shall stand, continually cherishing him with your hand, to the intent he maie suffer you to get vp. But if he be so froward and so stubborne, as he will not come nigh the blocke: then all to rate him with a terrible voice, and beat him your self with a good stick vpon the head betwixt the eares, not leauing him vntill you haue made him to come to the blocke, whether he will or not: remembring alwaies to make much of him when he sheweth himselfe obedient vnto you. Or if you will, you may obserue this maner following.

Lead him into some newe plowed ground, and there take the rains of the headstraine by the outermost end in your right hand, and cause some other man to take a sticke in his hand, and by beating the horse therewith vpon the rumpe, to force him to trot, or gallop, so fast as he maie driue, turning still round vpon the right hand, during which time, you shall not remoue forward your right foote from the place where you are. But onely go round with your left foote, towardes the horse, accompanieng him in every turne, so as you your selfe maie remaine alwaies in the middest of the circle, which the horse maketh. And immediately after the horse hath beene well tolled, and wearied with con-

tinuall

tinuall turning on the right hand: you shall change faote and hand, and keeping still your place, cause him to make as manie turnes on the left hand. And thus you maie turne him and tosse him on both hands, vntill you haue gotten the maisterie, & wholelie subdued him. But if the horse be so stubborne, and so froward, as one is not sufficient to make him go turning so often about: then besides the helpe of more persons, with wandes in their handes, you your selfe may also haue in your left hand, a longer wande then anie of theirs, and changing turnes, you shall also change the rodde into your right hand. By meanes whereof, it is possible, that you your selfe alone, by beating him sometime, with the one hand, and sometime with the other, shall make him without the helpe of anie other, to go freelie about. For this kind of correction is so grieuous to any horse, of what age soeuer he be, but speciallie to a Colte, that it will make him so gentle as a lambe, and to suffer you to doe with him what you list. Thus hauing taught you howe to tame your horse in such sort, as he shall suffer you take his backe: it is requisite, that before you mount vpon him, I put you in remembrance what you haue to doe: and then being mounted, how to sit him, and how to behaue your selfe in all points, like a Horseman.

What the rider ought to doe, before he take his horse back, and being mounted, how he ought to sit in his Saddle. Chap. v.

FIrst then see that your horse be surelie girded, and if he be come to weare a bit, see that the kirble thereof be fastened as it ought to be. And when you are mounted, make the raines of your bridle euen, and of a iust length, without stirring your horse, vntill you haue setled your selfe, and your clothes about you. That done, make him to go forward about two paces faire and softlie, and then staie. After that, pace him or trot him to the place where you mind to breake him. But after that he commeth to weare a bit, and is throughlie broken: then to keepe in vre with the double turnes heereafter taught, you shall in the end of the foresaide two paces, giue him also fire whole turnes, that is to saie, first two on the right

hand,

hand, then two on the left, and last of all, two on the right. Or else if you will, but three whole turnes, that is, for eche hand one, so as the first and last be on the right hand. And see that you doe not onelie sit him boldlie, and without feare, but also conceiue with your selfe that hee and you doe make as it were but one bodie: and that you both haue but one sense and one will. And accompanie him with your bodie in anie mooving that hee maketh, alwaies beholding his head right betwixt his eares, so as your nose maie directlie answere his foretop. Which shall bee a signe vnto you to knowe thereby, whether you sit right in your saddle or not. And let the ridge bone of your backe be euen with his. And let your left hand holding the reanes of the bridle, bee euen with the creast, and in anie wise keepe your thighes & knees close to the saddle, holding downe your legs straight like as you do when you are on foote. And let your feete rest vppon the stirrops in their due places, both heele and toe standing in suche sort, as when you shall turn your head, as farre as you can on the one side, without mouing your bodie, and looking downward to your stirrup: you shall perceiue, that your toe doth directlie aunswere the tip of your nose: and according as the saddle is made, so shall you ride long or short. But alwaies let your right stirrup be shorter than the other by halfe a hole, and keepe your stirrup leathers alwaies vnder your knees: albeit to ride with the stirrup leather aboue the knee, was thought by men of old time, more comelie, being partlie then constrained thereunto, for that their horses were barded after such a sort, as vnlesse they did ride so, and that with verie long spurres besides, they coulde not reach their bellies. Notwithstanding, to ride as we do now adaies, is a great deale more sure. But to sit a horse well, or to ride both sure and cleane, is not sufficient to make a perfect horseman, and therefore it is necessarie, that heere I also declare vnto you, wherin the perfection of a horseman chieflie consisteth.

Which be the thinges that make a perfect horseman. Chap. vi.

GRison saieth, that besides the helpe of a good Constellation, inclining you to followe continuallie, with a feruent zeale

the

the schole of Mars: to make you a perfect horseman, three things be requisite. First, to know how and when to helpe your horse. Secondlie, how and when to correct him. And thirdlie, howe and when to cherish him, and to make much of him.

Which three things being as generall kinds, have manie specialties and particularities belonging vnto them. And though they do seeme wholly to appertaine to the office of the Rider: yet can I not make you throughly to vnderstand them, vntill I come to entreate of the lessons, which the horse for his part hath also to learne: because indeede they must go both together. Notwithstanding, to the intent I maie vse fewer words hereafter, (you being somewhat instructed before) I will treate of them here in so good order as I can. For though I cannot shew you, when and how to vse these thinges in time, vntill I come to the horses lessons: yet I may shew you which they be, how manie there be, to what end euerie one serueth, and generallie the vse of the same. And first you shall vnderstand, that you may helpe your horse seuen maner of waies. That is to saie, with your voice, with your tongue, with your rod, with the bridle, with the calues of your legs, with your stirrup, and with your spurres, besides the helpe of the ground which is either declining or gulled with raine water, whereof wee shall speake hereafter when we deale with the horses lessons. Againe, you may correct him seuen maner of waies, that is to say, with your voice, rod, calues of your legs, bridle, stirrop, spurres, and with treading the ring in such sort as shalbe hereafter expressed. But you can cherish or coy him no more but two maner of waies, that is to saie, either with your voice in speaking to him gentlie, or else by clawing him on the necke with your hand, or with the nether end of your rod. And though that helpes and corrections in the doing, seeme in a maner all one: yet are they diuers, hauing respect vnto the time, for the one goeth before errour, and the other commeth after. For you helpe your horse, to the intent he should not erre: but you correct him for that he hath alreadie erred. But it is not so easie to know the due time and measure of helping him, as it is to know when or how to correct him. And therefore, I would not wish you to be to busie in helping him, vntill you can keepe time and measure, with both hand and heele,

least

leaſt your horſe not underſtanding your mind, grow to ſome diſorder: but rather vſe for a while, onlie to correct him when hee erreth, ſo ſhall he be afraid to doe the like againe. And in the meane time, by exerciſe, you ſhall learne as well the time of helping, as of correcting, and ſo much the ſooner, for that you ſée the inſtruments wherewith you helpe or correct be all one.

To what end ſuch helps and corrections ſerue. Chap. vii.

THe voice is that which ante horſe feareth moſt, and is néedfull in all diſorders.

The wand or rod ſerueth to correct the diſordering of his head, and to driue ſhrewd toies out of his mind.

The bridle correcteth both head, necke, and mouth, and maketh him to reane well, and doth help much to embolden or to mã him.

The caiſes of the legges, and likewiſe the ſtirrups, ordereth as well the hinder parts, as foreparts of the horſe.

The ſpurs do not only make him ſteddie and ſtiff, but alſo ſubiect and quicke to vnderſtand his Riders minde. The correction of treading the ring, maketh him ſtiff, as well in his manege as in euery other feat.

Of the ſound of the voice, toong and lips. Chap. viii.

BVt firſt, as touching the voice, you ſhall vnderſtande, that according as the ſignificatiõ of the noiſe or word is: ſo is it either a correction, a helpe, or a cheriſhing. For if you wold correct him for any ſhrewd toy or obſtinacie, you muſt all to rate him with a terrible voice, ſaieng to him, Ah traitor, ah villen, turne here, ſtop there, and ſuch like. But if you wold help him at any time, then muſt you vſe a more milde and chéerefull voice, as when you runne him, to ſaie: Hey, hey: or Now, now. Likewiſe if you would haue him to goe backe, you muſt ſaie with a lowd voice, Backe boy, backe I ſaie. Alſo if you would helpe him to aduance at the ſtop, you muſt ſaie chéerfullie Hup, hup. Likewiſe to make him light behind, you muſt ſay, Darrier, darrier, or vſe ſuch tearmes as you ſhall thinke good. But if you would cheriſh your horſe, or cote him for dooing well, then your voice muſt be moſt milde of all. As when you ſaie, Hola, hola: or, So boy ſo, or vſe ſuch like coting wordes. And whileſt we

talke here of the voice, it shall not be amisse also, to shew you that the sound of the tongue is a verie necessarie helpe, and meete to be vsed as well at the stop, as in the turns both single and double, I meane that sound which you commonlie make by turning vp the tip of your tong almost into the middle pallat of your mouth, and then suddenlie losing it againe from thence with a chirke. There is also another sound of the lippes as necessarie to be vsed as any of the rest, at such times as shall be hereafter taught, and that is made by closing your lippes hard togither, and then in opening them again somewhat wide, pronouncing as it were this word Pough.

Of the Rod. Chap. ix.

THough some thinke that the correction and help of the Rod or cudgell is not needfull, and that it maketh the horse to fearefull, yet experience teacheth the contrarie: and specially if it be vsed as it should be, that is to saie, if you correct him not therewith out of time, but euen in the selfesame instant that he erreth. And assure your selfe, that to correct a stubborne horse, it hath no fellowe. For if you beat him but once well and surelie therewith betwixt his eares, and vpon anie part of his head (his eies excepted) you shall need to giue him the lesse correction euer after. But touching the rod, diuers thinges are to be considered. As first, when to beare a rod: secondly, how to take it when it is first offered: thirdly, how to beare it at all times: fourthly, to what end it chiefelie serueth: & finallie, how and when to vse it as a helpe, correction or cherishing to the horse. And as touching the first two pointes, I saie, that if you breake a yong horse which was neuer handled before, you shal bear no rod in anie wise vntill he come to be ridden with a bit, and then at the first time that the rod is offered you, you must take it gentlie, for not making him afraid thereof: and hauing receiued it, you must coy him on the neck therewith, either by clawing him on the withers with the nether end thereof, or else with the middle of the rodde, lieng crosse vppon his maine, and that shall make him to abide it the better euer after. Nowe to the other two pointes. In learning how to beare your rod, as well when you pace or trot your horse,

as also when ẽ manege or to runn him: you shall also learne therby how to handle both speare and sword, to which end the bearing of the rod chiefly serueth. Wherefore it shall not greeue me, here to shew the order therof. And first, when you do but pace or trotte your horse, you shall beare your rod in your right hand, with the point right vp toward your right shoulder, holding the nether end therof betwixt your thumbe and your other fingers, distended and not closed. And when you would occupie it, you shal let the point fall either on the left side, or on the right, according as occasion shall require.

But when you manege your horse, you shall stretch out your arme towardes your right thighe, and couch your rod crosselwise ouerthwart the horses necke, and when hee hath made his first course, and turned on the right hand: then a little before the end of his second course, when he is in a maner readie to turne on the left hande, you shall lift your rod from thence, and hold it with the point right forth, on the right side of his head, not farre from his eie, or else somewhat lower towardes the eie of the bit, and as he changeth turns to and fro, so shall you change the placing of your rod, either of the one side, or of the other: which bee the two chiefe warding places of the sword.

Or if you will, you may hold your rodde as you would doe a speare when you runne, that is, with the point vpwarde, and the nether end lowe towards your thigh, but not resting vpon your thigh, and a little before that ye come to the place of turning, you may let the point fall on that side, which is requisite, and so soone as your horse hath made his turne, to holde it againe with the point vp as before, whereby you shall learne to charge and discharge a staffe.

Now, as touching the vsage of your rod in helping or correcting your horse (for the waie of cherishing him therewith, is before taught) because I cannot, as I haue heretofore saide, teach you the particularities therof, vntill I come to the horses lessons: let it suffice you therefore in the meane time, to learne those generall rules here following. First, if your horse will not turne on anie side that you would haue him, then beate him with your rod on the contrarie side. As for example, if you would haue him

to turne on the right side, then beat him on the left shoulder: and if you would haue him to turne on the left side, then strike him on the right shoulder. Likewise, if he be harder or heauier, or goe more disorderlie on the one side than on the other, beare your rod for the most part on that side, to the intent the sight thereof may put him in remembrance of his fault. Againe, when you would haue him light before, strike him on the foreparts, as on his shoulders, and forelegs, and when you would haue him light behinde, strike him on the flankes, rumpe, and hanches. In what time and how much, shall be taught you hereafter.

Of the Bridle and Reines. Chap. x.

BRison compareth the Bridle vnto the sterne of a ship, for as the ship is wholie guided by the sterne, so the Horses head is onlie ruled by the bridle, and therefore this is an instrument which requireth manie considerations, not onelie for the diuers fashions of bits, together with the members thereof, as the Cheekes, Barbles, Ports, Trenches, and such like, meete to serue diuers mouthes & to correct diuers vices, as here after shall be declared in the third booke at large, and set out with figures: but also for the knowing how and when to vse the same. For it is the Riders part, first to knowe when to ride his Horse with a bit, then what maner of bit, and how to vse the same at the first putting of it into the horses mouth, and in what part of his mouth the bit hath to rest. Then howe to holde the Reines, when euen together, and when one shorter than another, and what measure he shall keepe with his hande, in bearing hard or loose, high or lowe, when to vse false Reines, and when to leaue them, when and how to correct him with the bridle, and when to helpe him: of all which thinges I heere intend to speake briefly, and so plainlie as I can.

First therefore, when your horse can trot cleane, and keepe the ring: yea, and stop and turne indifferentlie well on both handes: then take a plaine Canon with right cheekes, such a one as hath bin somwhat worne before, and put it on with the headstall ouer his headstrain or muscroll, making him with the reines thereof by little and little to feele it in his mouth, and see that the bitte doe lie

upon

his nether gummes a little above his great teeth or tushes, which is the due resting place thereof. And if the bit were first annointed with a little honie and salt, it would make him the more to delight in it, and to be alwaies champing thereon, and to slay his mouth vpon it the more temperatlie. For if his mouth be distempered at the begining, it is not afterward so easilie holpen, which thing is little considered of our english horsemen, that vse to ride their yong Horses euen at the first, with so rough a brake or bit as may be gotten, which is one of the chiefest causes why we haue so manie headstrong Jades. Now as touching the holding of the reanes, you must hold them in your left hand, so as your little finger, and ring finger may bee betwixt the two reanes, and that your thumbe may lie close vppon the reanes, with the brawne thereof turned towards the pummell of your saddle: and if you haue no rod when you manege him or runne him, then you shal take the ouerplus of the reanes that hangeth downe, by the midst in your right hand, holding the same hard by your right thigh, and the more that you turne the nether end of your left fist inward, and the vpper end outward, the more you shall bring in your horses head, but therein you must vse discretion, according as occasion shall serue. And indeede to say truth, that point appertaineth not so much to the holding of the reanes, as to the bearing of your bridle hand, whereof there be three maner of waies. The first is, to beare it low, beneath the pummell of the saddle, euen vpon the withers, and that is to correct him. The second is, to beare it somewhat higher about the middle of the pummell, and that is to maintaine him. The third is, to beare it vpon the vppermost edge of the pummell, and neuer much higher, and that is to be vsed onlie when you would manege him or make him to doe anie thing. For to beare the bridle hand ouer high, as the vnskilfull Numidians in Affrike vse to do, is disalowed for diuers respects. First, for that it wearieth the arme: secondlie, if need were, you could not haue so much power to stop your Horse when you would. Thirdlie, being in the fielde against your enemie, the bearing of your hand so high, would be a trouble vnto your defence, & a commodity to your enimy, for that he might easily cut your reins in sunder. Finallie you can haue no steddie hand vpon your horse anie

times together, thereby your horse shall neuer reane well, nor yet haue a steddie hed. For who so will haue his horse to beare his hed steddie and to reane well, let him beare his hand rather low than high, so shall he be able to kéep it alwaies at one stay, which is one of the chiefest points of horsemanship. Notwithstanding, if your horse be any thing hedstrong, then when you manege him, or otherwise handle him, beare not too stiffe a hand, but rather somewhat light & temperat, for the more you force him, the lesse he will yéeld: but if he hath no such fault, then doe alwaies as I told you before. And remember alwais when you turn your horse, to draw neither your arme nor hand more of one side than of another, but to kéep it euen with the horses creast, & onely by turning your fist a little inward or outward, to signifie vnto him on what hand you would haue him to turne. And note, that for a while, it shall not be amisse, when you ride your horse, to let him weare his bridle & his headstrain or muskrol, both together, vntil he be somwhat acquainted with the bridle, for then you may take away his hedstrain, and in stead therof put on a paire of false reines, which are very necessary for a yong horse in the beginning, to make him beare his hed right: for bearing the ordinary reines alwaies iust and euen, you may shorten the false reines on any side at your pleasure. Which false reins, when your horse begins to war somwhat perfect in his doings, you may also take away, and ride him only with the ordinary reines: and if he happen afterward for lack of them to hang more of one side than of another, or to beare his head or necke awrie, you may correct it by bearing the contrarie raine shorter than the other. As for example: if he wrieth more on the left side than on the right, then holding the bridle as I taught you before, put in the right rein with your forefinger, & so hold it iust betwixt your forefinger and your thumb. And if néed be, you may also ioin your long finger vnto your forefinger, to hold it the faster. But if he wrieth more on the right side than on the left, then you shall shorten the left reine by putting two or three of your neathermost fingers betwixt the reines. But as touching the true order of correcting & helping your horse with the bridle, in time and measure, it shal be declared vnto you hereafter, as occasion shall serue: and therefore in the meane time let these generall rules suffice you.

Of

Of the Caines of the Legges, and of the heeles. Chap. xi.

I spy well shewe you how to correct or helpe your Horse, with the caines of your Legs, and with your héeles, and where to strike him, togither with the diuersitie of the strokes, and the names thereof, and to what ende euerie one serueth: but to tell you exactlie in what time, and with what measure, vntill I come to the horses lessons, I cannot. But of one thing I will aduertise you in any wise at the first, not to be rash, but to vse such temperance and moderation, as you may cause your horse by little and little to vnderstand your meaning, without any disorder or confusion. And therefore it were best dooing with him while he learns his first lesson, which is to tread the ring, as shall be hereafter declared vnto you at large: in the which according as you shal sée occasion, you shall help him, or correct him by striking him somewhat behinde the former girt, which is the right spurring place, either with the one calfe alone, or with both togither, with the one héele alone, or with both euen togither, or togither not euen, or els with one immediatlie after another. For so manie kindes of strokes there be seruing sometime to diuers purposes, and therefore haue diuers names accordingly. For the first is called the single stroke of the contrarie leg, wherwith you must help him to turne on which side you would haue him. As for example, if you would haue him to turne on the right hand, then you must touch him with your left legge: if on the left hand, then with your right leg. And likewise when he hangeth more on the one side in his going, than on the other, or be stiffer necked of any side, or beare not his head right, you must correct him for the most part with the single stroke on the contrarie side. The second is called the double stroke, or euen stroke, because you must strike him in the spurring place with both legs euen togither, which properlie and chiefly is to make him to go forward. Notwithstanding it serueth also manie times to make him to turne, to stoppe, to aduance, & for many other purposes, as you shal perceiue hereafter. The third may be verie well called the closing stroke, because it makes the horse to close his turne round and iust: & the order of it is thus. When you would haue your horse to close his turn well

(as for example on the right hand) then in his turning touch him with both legs together, but not euen, that is to say: with the left leg in the true spurring place, and with your right leg somewhat more behinde towards the horses flanke, which maner of striking Grison calleth in his language Attondare. The fourth serueth onlie as a correction for sundry vices hereafter to be declared, & then you must strike your horse in the spurring place three or foure times together with one leg after another, so fast as your legges may walke, which kind of strokes Grison calleth Botti corisponden ti, but in our tong, mee thinke it were not amisse to call it the Bunching stroke, because your legs must goe like two bunching beetles, or else the clinching stroke, fetching a similitude from the Botewrights, whose hammers when they clinch the nails, doe answer one another. In all which foure kindes of strokes, if you can learn to kéep time & measure with your legs & héeles, you shall be the better able to kéepe time with your spurres, when you come to rise your horse with spurres. For there is no other difference betwixt them, but that the stroke of the one toucheth the quicke, and the other not: because the one is blunt, and the other sharpe.

Of the Stirrup. Chap. xii.

THough the correction or helpe of the Stirrop be seldome vsed: yet it is a good helpe to a yong horse in the beginning, vntill he be somewhat broken. For if he carieth his head or necke awrie, or hang of one side more than of an other, by striking him with the stirrop vnder the shoulder on the contrarie side, you shall make him to amend his fault.

Of the Spurre. Chap. xiii.

HAuing declared to you in the beginning (when I shewed you how many kinds of corrections and helps there were) to what end the spurre serueth, and also mouing in a maner last of all, in speaking of the vsing of your legs and héels, in what part of the bodie you should spurre your horse, and howe manie kinds of strokes there were, and when to be vsed: it resteth now that I shew you when it is time to make your horse both to abide the Spur, and also how to know the Spur, and all the helps

thereof

thereof, and where, and howe you shall do the same. And first you shall understande, that in olde time men were so ignorant, as they would never spurre their horses, untill they were not onlie staid of head, but also perfect in all suche orders as were vsed in those daies: so that though their horses were fire or seuen yéeres old, yet could no man assure himselfe of their gwdnes. For most commonlie when they came afterward to be spurred, either they wared so stubborne and so dinellish as they would not abide the spur, but fall a leaping and flinging, and trieng of masteries to cast their Riders: or else they became so restife, and so dull therewith, as they would abide it too well, and stand euen still, not once mouing for it, and the more they were spurred, the worse they would bee. And although that those Riders had extraordinary meanes to make a horse to abide the spurre, whether he would or not, as by forcing him when they spurred him, to plunge into some great water or sea, or to behang him with spurres made of purpose to molest him, or else perhaps, as I haue séene some Riders do, to behang him with a paire of stuffed boots, or with sandbags, hauing spurres or pricks to griene him whilest they chase him to and fro. And so to wearie him that waie: yet they had no waies to make him knowe the helpe of the spurre, and thereby to understande the Riders meaning, and all for lacke of knowledge & good consideration. They lacked knowledge, for that they would neuer almost spurre their horse, but when they ran him, so that the spurre serued them in a manner to none other purpose. Again they lacked consideration, in that they suffred their horses to go so long before they spurred them. For they might wel think that it was not so easy to make a horse either to abide, or to know the spur when he is growne in age, strength, and luffie courage, as when he is yong, simple and fearefull, and apt to rule as a man will himselfe. And therefore I would wish you not to deferre the time so long, but after that your horse hath worne the bridle haise a score of times, let him learne to know the spurre, be hee neuer so yong, leane, or féeble. Which would be done, either whilest you cause him to trot the ring in some new deepe plowed ground, in helping him therewith, as hereafter shall be taught, or else when you trot him in the like ground right out. And though you may

gine

giue him therwith a carriere, if you will: yet to auoid all disorders that might thereof insue, the surest and readiest waie is onelie to trot him: for otherwise you must tarie vntill he can run a carriere well, and stop as he ought to do, which perhaps would be too long. And of whatsoeuer disposition or mettall the horse be, dul or quick, forget not in any wise in the selfesame instant, that you put spurs vnto him, to helpe him with your voice, or else with the sound of your lips, and that shall put by all shrewd toies, whereof perhaps he might otherwise shew you some, as to leape, to fling, to caste his head betwixt his legs, to lie downe or such like. And if you see that the spurre doth make him to spring forward, and to amende his pace, then make much of him, and so by little and little you shall bring him acquainted with the spur well inough, and in time to know all the helpes and corrections of the same.

But if you haue to spurre a horse that is somewhat in yeares, and of nature ramege or restife: then see that in ante wise you spurre him not at the first, either when you trot him, or run him, but onelie while you pace him fair and softlie through some town or citie, and so going, sodenlie put spurres vnto him, helping him in the selfsame instant with your voice, or with the sound of your lips, and force him therewith to fall into a swift trot, the length of twentie or thirtie paces, which if he doeth, make much of him, and for a while vse him thus halfe a score times in a date, vntill he bee perfect in that: which when you see he is, then you may goe into the fielde, and there whilest you trotte him in some newe plowed ground, spurre him and helpe him as before, making him to gallop as hard as he may driue a prettie waie togither, and then staie, making much of him, if he did well. Thus proceeding from soft pace to trot, and from trot to gallop, by continuall exercise you shall make him both to feare the spur, and also to know the helpe thereof. Notwithstanding, there be some horses of nature verie liuelie and sensible, which through euill breaking at the first, and afterward by sufferance, haue béene so euill accustomed, as they will neuer yéeld to the spurre, but so soone as they féele it, they will leape and fling, and take on like spirits. Wherefore, if anie such horse chance to come into your handes, first for a while ride him without spurres, and vse him to tread the ringes, vntill hee hath

learned

learned to go quietlie in the same, and to kéep the true path: which when you sée hee doeth, then ride him with both spurres, and also with a good wand in your hand. And whilest he treadeth the Ring, in some new plowed ground with deepe furrowes, when time is, touch him with your spurres at sundrie times twice, and if he will then plaie his vagarie, beat him forthwith with your wand vpon the head on both sides, and betwixt the eares, and vppon his fore-legges, all to rating him at the selfesame présent with a terrible voice, and neuer leaue him vntill you haue made him to yeeld vnto the spurre, without making any resistance at all. And to the intent that he may suffer the prycke of the spurre the better, it shall be necessarie to wearie him, sometime with continuall turning and trotting him round, and ouerthwart the furrowes, and sometime by trotting and galloping him right out in one path to and fro. By means of which trauell and often spurring him together, he shall fall into suche a sweate and heate, that the strokes shall grieue him the lesse. By meanes whereof, he shall not onelie bee content to abide the spurre, but also learne by the stroke thereof, to know your will and to obeie the same, and so much the more if you shall not forget when hee doeth well, to make muche of him. But note by the waie, that this last order belongeth to a Horse of great courage, for if you shoulde in such sort molest and wearie a horse of a dull spirit he would giue ouer, and for faintnes become restife: and therefore a good consideration must be had, as well to the horses strength as to his vice.

But now, though I shewed you in the last chapter before, how many kinds of strokes of the spur there were, and generally how and when to be vsed: yet let it not grieue you that I repeate here some part thereof once againe with some little addition not to be left out. First then, whensoeuer your horse will not turne as you would haue him, or be stiffer necked of one side than of another, or will not carie his head right, nor continue his trot, you shall correct him alwaies with the single stroke of the contrarie spur: but if he ware slowe in his trotte, bearing his head and necke right, then you shall correct him with the euen stroke of both spurs together: for that stroke properly serueth to quicken him and to make him goe forwarde, and vnproperlie for the other purposes in the

formet

former chap. rehearsed. It is requisite also that I shew you some what more plainlie how to correct your horse with one spur after another, which I called before the clinching stroke, the order wher of is thus. When your horse committeth a fault of any side, as for example on the left side, then giue him with one spur immediatlie after another, three strokes. Wherof the first and last must be on the right side, but if hee erreth on the right side, then the first & last stroke must be on the left side. And note, that after your horse will abide the spurre, and also knoweth the helpes therof, it shall not be good to spur him often, but onlie when you see it very needfull, as to direct his head and necke, when he reareth not well, or to helpe him in his single or double turnes when you mannege him, or else to giue him swiftnesse when he passeth a carriere: for ouermuch spurring will make him swing tailed, and speciallie if he be a Jennet or Turky horse, whose tailes be alwaies loose and at libertie, and are not tied as the coursers be.

Of the Musroll and the Martingale. Chap. xiiii.

TO these forsaid kinds of helps and corrections I think that Grison would haue added the musroll & the martingale, but that they seemed perchance vnto him extraordinarie things and not meet to be vsed but at certain times, and specially the martingale. Which though it was first inuented by Euangelista, an excellent rider, and a great horsmaister of Millan, not onlie to make the horse to haue a steddie head, but also to make him light before in his aduancing, & in his going to gather his bodie round together: yet Grison seemeth not greatlie to allow it: albeit he saith it may be vsed when the horse is verie heauie before, and marueilously vnstaid of hed, neither would he haue the horse weare it about xv. daies together at the most: thinking it indeede a great deale better, to bring the horse from such faults by such meanes as are by him hereafter taught. But he praiseth much the Musroll, saieng that if the horse do naturalie keepe his mouth close together, that then it cannot hurt him: but if he holde it open, then it doth not onelie helpe him, but also correct him of that fault in such sort, as after that he hath beene vsed a little thereunto, it will make him steddie, both of mouth, head, and necke, and to reane as he should doe.

The

Of the Horſes leſſons in generall, and order thereof, and in what time of the day he ſhould be taught. Chap. i.

THus hauing declared vnto you, with what inſtrumentes you ſhoulde helpe or correct your Horſe, and generallie howe, and when to vſe them, and alſo how and when to cheriſh him, all which things do onlie appertaine to the Riders office: I thinke it therefore now meet to ſhew you what the horſe hath to learn for his part, and alſo what order you ſhall kéepe in breaking him: for if a horſe be taught vnorderlie, hee ſhall neuer be perfect in anie thing. As for example, if you (as ſome men doe for lacke of ſkil) would vſe to gallop your horſe, before he can ſtoppe well in his trot: or to runne him, before he can ſtop well in his gallop: or to manege him with a ſwift gallop, before he can ſtop, aduance, and turne readilie on both handes, you ſhall marre him for euer. And therefore take héede that ye duelie followe this order heere following.

Firſt, you muſt vſe great diligence in making him to treade ſoftilie, to keepe one pathe, and to trot cleane, which is one of the chiefeſt points of all, becauſe it is harder by nature for a Colt to trot well, then to go ſoftlie, to run or to gallop.

Secondlie, you muſt teach him to be light at ſtop.

Thirdlie, to aduance before, and to parke behinde.

Fourthlie, to turne readilie on both handes, with ſingle turne and double turne.

Fiftlie, to make a ſure and readie manege.

Sixtlie, to paſſe a ſwift Carriere.

And finallie, if your horſe be nimble and apt thereto by nature, you may make him a Stirer, by teaching him to bound aloft, and to parke withall: to gallop the gallop galliard, to fetche the Capriole, to doe the Corouetti, and ſuch kinds of ſaultes: and in al his doings, from the beginning to the ending, you muſt ſée that hee reine well, and beare his head ſteddilie, which is the foundation

of

of all the reſt.

And by obſerning this order, with all the rules thereto belonging, in ſuch ſort as ſhall be hereafter taught: ye ſhall within the ſpace of foure or fiue monethes, make your horſe perfect in all points. Notwithſtanding, there be ſome yong horſes ſo ſlowe of growth, as although they can do their thinges orderlie: yet they ſhew no ſtrength or force in their doings, vntill they be fiue or ſix yeares old, becauſe their ioints before that time are not full knit, nor their mouthes throughlie ſtaied. And note, that from ſix yeares to fiftéene, a horſe being not maimed nor hurt, may verie well continue in his goodneſſe: yea, and ſome horſes perhaps wil continue vnto xx. yeares and aboue, as the examples before recited, doe well teſtifie.

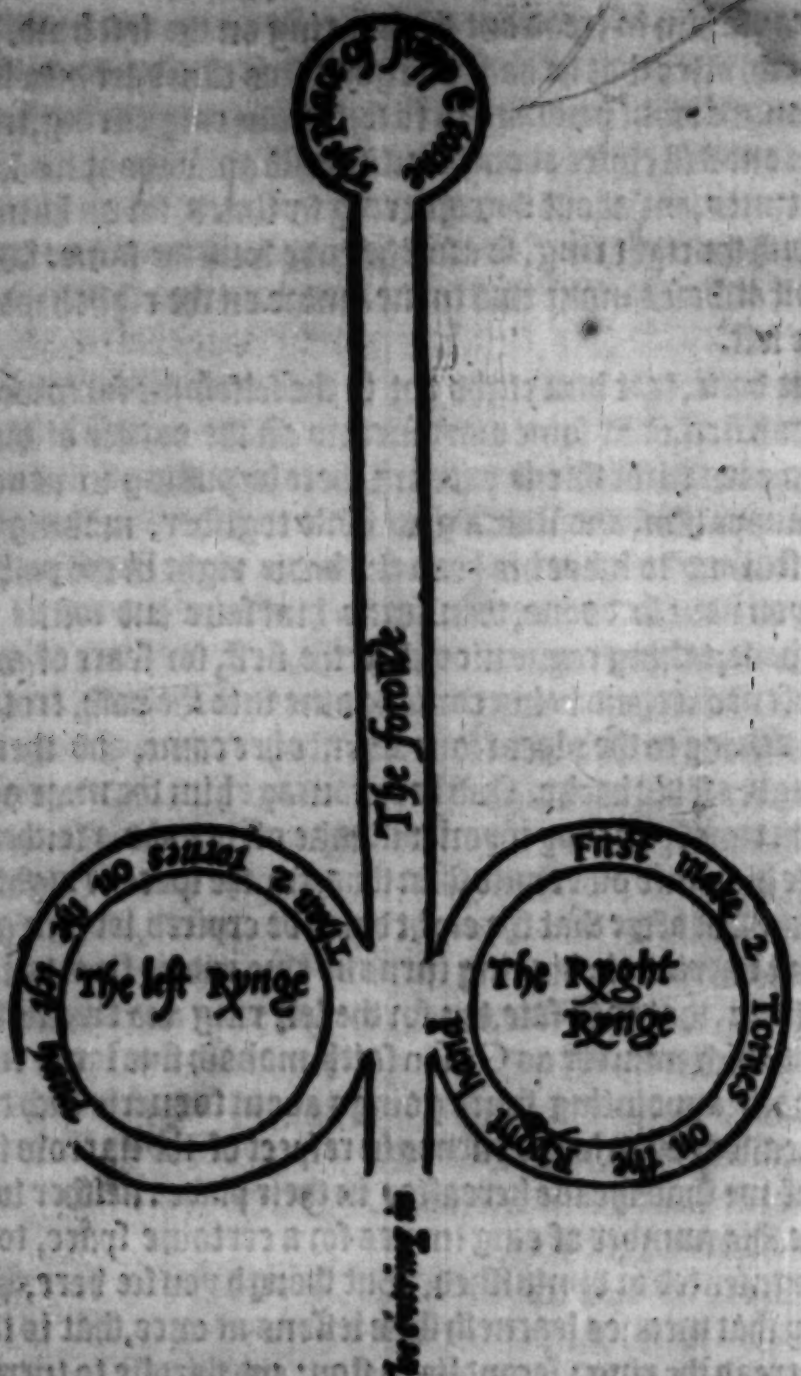
Moreouer, ſée that you teach your horſe earelie in the morning, before you giue him his prouender, not failing in the beginning of his breaking, vntill he be ſomewhat perfect, to ride him euerie daie once. And afterward to ride him twiſe in a weéke ſhal ſuffice, vnleſſe you ſée that ſuch reſt doeth cauſe him to forget his leſſons, for then, vntill he hath gotten that which he had loſte, it ſhall be requiſite to ride him againe euerie daie one houre at the leaſt, or ſo long time as he is able well to endure, leauing him alwaies with a good mouth. For to take ouermuch of a horſe at once, is the next waie to make him faint hearted and reſtife.

The order of treading the Ring, and to what end it ſerueth. Chap. ii.

AND the intent then that your horſe may haue a lofte pace, trot cleane, and learne to keepe one path, you ſhall firſt cauſe him to be brought into the fielde, into ſome newe plowed grounde, and the deeper the furrowes bee, the better to make him lift his féete: whereas after that you haue taken his backe, you ſhall trotte him right out about the length of a hundred paces. That doone, you ſhall enter a good waie into one of the furrowes, in ſuch part of the lande as you may haue ſpace enough, and mould enough round about you, and there on the right hand ouerthwart the furrowes, make him to tread out twice together a round ring, conteining in circuit about xvb. or xvi. paces: and being come about at the ſecond time to the place where he began

gan, cause him to tread out the like ring on the left hand. About the which, after that he hath also gone two times, let him begin again on the right hand, and so to shift from ring to ring, treading euerie one still twice about, vntil he hath gone about the left ring foure times, and about the right ring six times, for as he must begin with the right ring, so must he ende with the same. Whereby he shall alwaies make two turnes more on the right hande, than on the left.

That done, trot him right out in the selfesame furrowe where he began first, or in some other furrow on the outside of the right ring, the length of thirtie paces: & there by pulling in your bridle hand stoppe him, and staie a good while together, making him to stand still and to keepe his head and bodie right in the path. And when you haue so doone, then turne him faire and softlie on the right hand, taking roome inough at the first, for feare of making him soft necked, and being come againe into the path, trotte him backe againe to the place from whence hee came, and there you shall light off his backe. And to encourage him the more against the next time, you may if you will take off his pad. Neither shall you vse him ante otherwise than thus, for the space of eight daies together. But after that the eight daies be expired, let him goe, increasing euerie daie his ring turns by two and by two, vntill hee come to 22. that is to saie, ten for the left ring and twelue for the right. Which number as Grison saith, maketh fiue large turnes, and a halfe, appointing foure goings about to euerie such turne: and he calleth them large turnes in respect of the narrowe turns, whereof we shall speake hereafter in their place: neither woulde he haue this number of ring turnes for a certaine space, to be either augmented or diminished. But though you see here, that the horse by that meanes learneth three lessons at once, that is to say: first to tread the ring: secondlie to stop: and thirdlie to turne: yet to auoid confusion, I will not treate of them all at once, but of euerie one particularlie by himselfe. And first, to the intent you should the better vnderstand of what sort the ringes ought to be, behold here this figure following, liuely expressing both rings together, with the furrowe and place of stopping and turning.



There is also another fashion of a ring, which because it serueth onelie as a correction, when your horse is harder to turne on the right hand than on the left, I will not therefore speake of it here, but reserue it vntill I come to treat of the correction of that fault.

If

If your Horse be weake and feeble, you may cause the rings to be troden out before with some other horse, to the intent that hee may haue the better will to follow in a waie readie beaten to his hand: and also if he chance to swarue out of the path, he shall the sooner perceiue his errour, and thereby the quicklier returne into the right path againe. And though your horse be not weake: yet it shall be best at the first not to tread out the rings with a trot, but rather with a soft pace, vntill the path be somewhat beaten, that he may see his waie where he goeth. and then to followe on with an indifferent trot: yea and if your horse bee ouer liuelie, or too quicke, you shall not suffer him to trot the rings at all: but onlie to pace them faire and softlie for certaine daies togither, vntill he be somewhat staied and acquainted with them. For otherwise, he will beare too hard vpon your hand, and seeke to flee out.

And when the ring pathes, through continuall treading ware somwhat hard: you may shift into a new place, where the ground is newlie eared with deepe furrowes, and that (as I saide before) shall make him to lift high. Albeit, Grison in his fourth booke, doth not allowe often changing in the beginning, vnlesse that necessitie so forceth, saieng, that the Horse being continuallie taught in one place, shall the better remember his lessons: yea, and also his corrections, whereby there shall be bred in him as it were an habite of well doing. Notwithstanding, when you come to manege your horse, or to passe a Cariere, I would not wish you to vse alwaies one place, or one length, least he be to seek when you change places, thinking that he should not do it auie other where: or if he do it, not to passe his accustomed length, and so perchance stop before you would haue him.

But there be some which will not vse their horses to two rings but to one onelie, which is very euill for a yong horse, because it will make him faint harted and fearfull: for when he commeth to the place where he is wont to be turned, he will strine to go forth right, and so perhaps become restife, or at the least not go in the ring so euenlie and so iustly as he should do. Notwithstanding to a horse of some years & of a liuely spirit, it may sometime be very wel allowed, and especially if he be stiffe necked and hard to turn; yea, and also to shew, that though the forme of the rings be therby

some what altered: yet he should alwaies keepe in one tune. After that your horse hath learned the bridle a while, and is well acquainted therewith, you may increase your ring turnes euerie daie, by three for each ring, vntill you come to xviii. which make xi. large turnes and a halfe, that is xxi. for the left ring, and xxxvi. for the right, according as your horse shall be in breath, and able to endure it: otherwise a lesse number may suffice, for ouermuch labor doth weaken a young horse, which weakenesse doth not appeare in some, vntill they bee fowre or fiue yeares olde: for at the first the feare that he hath of his rider, maketh him to vnite his force together, and to beare it out the more stoutlie. But after that he is well acquainted with his rider, he will not shew so much force in his labour and trauell as he did before, but his naturall weakenesse will then appear, and so much the more, as he shal grow in greater nesse, and be laden with flesh. Notwithstanding the number of turnes aboue said, is conuenient for any horse of an indifferent strength: for 61. turnes may suffice anie horse, be hee neuer so strong or good of breath, vnlesse he be to vnreasonable strong, in age, euil broken before, and vsed to libertie: for then to breake him of his stubbornesse, it shall not be onelie requisite to giue him 62. turnes, but alſo 122. but that seldome for feare of weakning his backe, yea, & perchance euerie member beside. But most commonlie after the wearing of his bridle, obserue the number of 46. which you shall not increase, but vpon such occasion as is afore said, nor yet diminish the same, vnlesse it be when you trotte him, and turne him to and fro in manege wise, after that you become out of the rings, whereof we shall treat hereafter in his place.

The helpes and corrections meete to be vsed for him that treadeth the rings, also when you shall gallop the rings, and to how many good purposes it serueth. Chap. xii.

IF your horse in treading the Ring, trotteth not fast enough, or bee ramege, that is to saie, not keeping a iust pace, but fareth as one that were in two mindes, not caring whether he went or not: or if he will suddenlie stop before his lesson bee ended, then quicken him often with your voice or with the sound of your lips before mentioned, & by little

and

and little, make him know the helpe of your leg and heele, by striking him sometime with one leg or heele, and sometime with both, according as his fault shall require. The order whereof is before declared in the first booke, the 11. chapter. And to make him goe the iuster, it shall be good for the most part to holde your contrary legge in his sight, and likewise your rodde, when you come to beare one. As for example, if he be stiffer on the right side than on the left, then hold vp your left leg, and lay your rod crosse ouer his left shoulder. But if he be harder on the left side, then holde out your right leg, & holde your rod right out not far from the horses right eie, remembring alwaies to hold the reines of your bridle, the one shorter than the other, in such sort as I taught you in the first booke the x. chapter. But if he be ramege either by nature, or by euil breaking, then make him to tread the ringes first with a swift trot, and then with so hard a gallop as he can driue, helping him in due time with your voice, rod, or spurre, as occasion shall require, and that shall make him to forget toies, and to attend his waie: but see that you gallop not him first, for feare of making him restife. And this way serueth to correct a great many of other faults, as the lightnesse and plaieng with his head, and when hee draweth vp his tongue and will not stay his mouth vppon the bit as he ought to do. Or if he go iumping without order, or flinging with his heeles, likewise if he be too hastie or furious, this will stay him, and cause that he shall afterwarde stop the better in his Cariere, and not run awaie. Also if he vse to pisse alwaies when hee is handled, this taken in time will correct him. And finallie, if hee be slowe and dull, this will quicken him. But if he be very liuely and quicke of himselfe: then you shall doe cleane contrarie to this, that is to saie, you shall neither giue him swift trot, nor gallop. And whensoeuer you gallop your horse, remember alwaies to helpe him more or lesse with your voice, rodde or spurre, according as the qualitie of the horse shall require: and when hee doeth well, to cherish him. But though the gallopping of the ring, serueth to so many good purposes, as you haue heard: yet for the most part, let him tread the rings with a good round trotte, and not to gallop them at all, vnlesse some of the foresaide occasions do so require.

Of stopping. Chap. iiii.

Hitherto we have spoken of treading the rings onlie, now we will shew you how you shall teach your horse to stop. A kind you before, that hauing ended the number of your ring turnes, you should trotte your horse right out in the middle furrow betwixt the rings, vntill you come to the place of stop, and there to staie a good pretie while togither, keeping his bodie right in the path, which if he will not do, but stand ouerthwartlie, either with his forepartes or hinder partes, or else perchance with his whole bodie cleane out of the path: then see that ye touch him at the first neither with heele nor rod, least he not knowing the one nor the other bee distempered, and perchance fall a running away. But you shall appoint a footman to stand at the place of stop, who shall direct him into the right path, by thrusting him with his handes on that side which standeth out of order. And this waie is not onelie good for a yong horse, but also for anie other horse that is in age, and by meanes of euill breaking hath beene accustomed to stop wrong, but then the footman besides thrusting him with his handes, may also chastise such a horse with a rod, by striking him therewith on that side that he erreth: or if you will not so do, you may cause your horse to go still in the same path a yard or two further forward, and there stop him, holding the rein of his headstraine straighter on that side wheron he most forceth your hand, than on the other, and that shall keepe him whether hee will or not, in the right path.

And after that he beginneth to be somewhat obedient vnto you, you may direct him into the right pathe when he stoppeth wrong, with the ouerplus of the reines of his headstraine, by beating him therewith moderatelie, vpon that shoulder or rump that standeth furthest out of order. But beware in any wise that you strike him with no rod, before he come to weare a bridle.

It is very good also to trot him to some hanging ground, called of the Italians, Pendino, and there to stoppe him somewhat downe the hill, but therein you must vse good discretion in choosing suche a grounde as shall be meet for the purpose. For a yong Horse manie times will be afraide to stop downe the hill, and speciallie if it be ouer steepe: yea, and it may do him more harme than good,

being

being an occasion perchance that he shall never after be light of stop. Wherefore, at the first it shall be best to stoppe him in such a ground as shalbe neither too steepe, nor yet too plaine, but betwixt both, as that is which somthing falleth, & riseth immediatly again: so shall not the horse be afraid of it. And afterwarde, when hee is growne in age, and hath more force and strength, you may be the bolder to stop vpon a steeper ground, according as you shal think it needful. And let this suffice you for this time, because we shal be forced to speak more of stopping in the chapters next following.

Of going backe, and to what end it serueth, and how and when you shall teach your horse to do it. Chap. v.

AFter that your horse hath worn the bridle, and knoweth the rod and spurre, you shall teach him when he hath stopt be it vpon a hanging ground, or otherwise, to go backeward three or foure steps, which will not onelie slake his mouth, and make him light of head, but also to lift his legs, and to be the more apt to aduance before. For the which cause it were necessarie to talke of this before I proceed any further.

To teach your horse then to go backe, you must so soone as hee hath stopt, pull in your bridle hand moderatlie, according as the horses resistance shall require, and so keeping your hande steddie without giuing him any libertie, strike him faire and softly vpon the bowing of his necke with your rod, saying vnto him with a soft voice in that instant. Back, back, I say, and solicit him in that sort a prettie while together: for the which if he will not moue his legs, or both make any resistance, then spur him in time, first with one spurre, and then with another, but most on that side whereas you see his hinder partes to stand most out of order, to the intent that he may go right in the path. And besides this, you may haue a footman to stand at the place of stop, with a rod in his hand, who in the selfe same time that you will pull in the bridle, shall knock him faire & softlie with his rod vpon the knees, & seldome or neuer vpon the snowt. And sometime let him onelie threaten him without beating him at all: but if this will not suffice, then let the same man take the cheekes of the bit in his hand, and so force him to go backe, not leaning to molest him, sometime one waie, and some-

time another, vntill at the least hee hath made him to pull backe one foote. And whensoeuer he doth well, be readie immediatlie to cherish him for the same, and then let him stay a while. That done, cause him to doe the like againe, by pulling in the bridle onelie, and none otherwise. For the making much of him before, will cause him to goe backe of his owne accord with both legs, if not, then by correcting him in such sort as is aforesaid, you shall force him to goe backe whether he will or not.

Of aduancing whereto it serueth, and where, how, and when you shall teach him to do it. Chap. vi.

TO aduance, is a tearme vsed of our horsmen, signifying that which the horse doth, when at the stop he lifteth vp both his forefeet euen together, somwhat aboue the ground, and letteth them fall again twice or thrice together, which the Italians called Far le posate, and it is so necessarie a thing, as without it the horse can neuer manege well, nor turn readilie, as hereafter you shall well perceiue. Wherefore, when your horse can stop well, and will also goe backwarde when you would haue him, it is meet to teach him to aduance.

And as it is not amisse to teach it him, when you stoppe him in the furrowe betwixt the two rings, so is it very good also to go into some long sandie waie which is euen and plaine, and there, after that you haue trotted him right out with a very swift trot, the length of fortie fast or thereabout, to stoppe him, helping him immediatlie with your voice, and also with both spurres euen together, and sometime with your rod, by striking him therewith on the right shoulder, but seldome on the left. And if he will not aduance for that, no not so much as with his right legge: then keeping still a steadie hand vpon him, correct him immediatlie twice or thrice together with the euen stroke of your spurres, or else with one spurre after another, helping him alwaies with your voice, as by saieng vnto him, Huppe, huppe: or such like word. And immediatlie after, trotte him out againe the like distance with a swift trot, and at the stop doe as you did before, continuing still the same, vntill you haue made him to lift his feete from the ground, and to aduance thrice, or twice together at the least, which

when

when he doth, though it be but meanelie, yet make much of him, and cole him with your right hande, or with your sticke, by clawing him therewith on the necke nigh vnto the withers, suffering him there to state a while: that done, trotte him forth againe, and at the next stoppe, you shall see that so soone as hee heareth your voice, he will aduance of his owne accorde, not onelie with one leg, but with both: yea and so many times together, as you will haue him.

And in so doing, you shall seldome helpe him with your spurs, or rod, but onelie with the calfes of your legges, and with your voice, which must alwaies be one. And if the grounde where hee stoppeth be somewhat hanging, it shall be so much the more easie for him. But after that he can aduance, and doth vnderstande the helpes of the voice, rodde, and spurre, beware that yee vse not to giue him such short stoppes one after another, least he take a custome to stoppe sooner, and therewith to aduance higher than you would haue him: but rather trotte him right out the full length of a Carier, towardes the knoll of some hill, and there stoppe him vpon the browe thereof, or steeper downe, according as the qualitie of the horse shall require, helping him as is aforesaide. For assure your selfe, that a hanging ground is very necessarie, and specialliе when the horse is not apt of himselfe to bowe his houghes behinde: for the horse that is naturallie light, hath not so much need of a hanging ground, because that hee with a little helpe in plaine ground, will learne to stoppe euen vpon his buttocks, which is the chiefest grace of the stoppe. For vnlesse the horse in his stoppe doth bowe his houghs orderlie, and run sliding on his hinder legges, neither stoppe nor aduancing shal be praise worthie.

When your horse can stop and aduance well in his trotte, then you may teach him in the like grounds to do the same vpon a gallop, vsing the selfe same order, helpes and corrections, that are aboue written. And forget not in any wise to make much of him when he doeth well, but for the most part let him continue the doing thereof vpon a trotte: for that shall make him so light and so perfect, as when you come afterward to gallop him, or to runne him he shall not be to seeke therein.

Corrections to be vsed when your horse aduanceth too high, or out of order, or when you would not haue him. Chap. vii.

If your Horse aduanceth too high, or lifteth not vp his feet euen togither, and with such grace as he ought to doe, correct him immediatlie with the euen stroke of your spurs, and sometime with your rod also, striking him therwith vpon the flanks: that done, put him forward again the length of a short maneging course, and there stop, helping him to aduance with your voice, and if need bee, with the calfes of your legges, or with your spurres, or else with your rod vppon his right shoulder, and sometime with altogither, according as you shall see it needfull. Or after that you haue corrected him, you may if you wil without putting him forward, turne him, and go backe again in the selfe path a good pretie waie, and then to returne from thence with a good round trot, and to stop him vpon the same knoll where he stopt before, and so to continue returning still too and fro, vntil he hath amended his fault, and aduanceth as you woulde haue him, which when he doth, make much of him, and let him stay a good while after, for the longer that you stay him, the more perfect you shall make him.

If your horse hath gotten an euill custome to stoppe, and to aduance withall, suddenlie, or oftener than you woulde haue him, which fault most commonlie is incident to yoong horses, then correct him immediatly with your voice, & also with your rod vpon his flanks, and sometime vpon his forlegs: yea and if need bee with your spurs euery maner of way, forcing him to go forward, and not to aduance, but when you shall prouoke him thereunto, either with voice, spurres, legs, or rod, or with all togither, according as the horses qualitie shall require. For some horse is so vile of courage, and so dull of vnderstanding, as if you alwaies vse to helpe him with spurres at the stoppe, then so often as you shall spurre him, to make him go forward, he wil by and by stoppe and aduance, and the more ye spurre him, the worse he will be, and so perchance become restife. Wherfore you must vse great diligence and good discretion, in making him to knowe by the hard or loose bearing your bridle hand, when you helpe him with your spurres

to go forward, and when to stop. And vntill he be perfect therein, it shall be best to helpe him at the stop oftetis with your voice, and not to vse your spurres or rod, but when you doe correct him, or else when you would haue him go forward.

When and how to teach your Horse to parke, and to make him light behind. Chap. viii.

If your Horse be of conuenient age, and growne to his full strength, and therewith haue a good backe, and able to endure (for otherwise it should doe him more harme than good:) then hauing taught him to stoppe, and to aduance before, you may teach him also to parke behind, by helping him in his aduancing with your voice, and with your rod, beating him therewith behind, sometime on the one side, and sometime on the other. And if néede be, you may also helpe him with the euen stroke of your spurres, not leauing to molest him in such sort, vntill you see that he beginneth to gather vp his rumpe, and to lift his hinder legs, which doing, you shall leaue beating, and make much of him, and afterwarde you shall see that with a verie little helpe, he will fall vnto it of his owne accord. You may also, if you will, appoint a footman that hath some skill to stande behind you with a long rod in his hand, who at the stop whiles your horse aduanceth, may helpe him with his voice, and by beating him on the haunches and on the rumpe, cause him to parke, which waie is verie good, so that your horse bee not ouer liuelie, and therewith also naturallie headstrong, for then perchance it will make him to spring forward, and to fall a running: wherefore vntill he hath a staid mouth, it were better to vse the first waie, or else to bring him vnto it in the stable in this sort.

When you come into the stable stand behind him with a long rod in your hand, and beate him therewith on the mid rump, helping him in that instant with that voice wherewith ye vse to make him light behind, not ceasing to molest him in that sort, vntill he gather vp his rumpe, and cast out both his haules euen together, and that of a iust height twice or thrice together, which doing, you shall leaue beating, & make much of him, suffering him to rest a good while after. Thus soliciting him twice or thrise a day, you shal

make

make him so light and so ready of his heeles, that he will parke so soone as he shall but heare your voice, or the whisk of your rod, and when he can doe it well in the stable, then to make him the more perfect therin abroad, you may when you ride him, cause a footman to stand behind you with a long sticke in his hand, who by threatning him, and beating him on the rumpe, may cause him to park so often as you shall think it meet: and if your horse be very light and nimble of himselfe, you may teach him also to leap at the stop, and to parke withall. But sith that leaping is more meet for a stirring horse than for a horse of service, and also for that there be diuers kinds of leapes, I will not therefore treat of that here, but defer it vntil I haue shewed you the order of turning & maneging

How to teach your horse to turne readily on both hands. Chap. ix.

I Intend to speake here of the narrow & straight turns and not of the large turnes, otherwise called Ring turnes, for we haue talked of them sufficiently before. And first you shall vnderstand, that of the narrowe turnes there bee three kindes, that is to saie, halfe turne, whole turne, and double turne. The halfe turne is when the horse turneth on the one side, setting his head that waie that his taile before stode, and is called the halfe turne, for the horse maketh but halfe a circle: but if hee doubleth the same and setteth his heade that waie it stood at the first, then it is called a whole turne, for in turning round about he maketh a circle complete. And two such whole turnes do make a double turne, which Grison calleth Volta raddoppiata, who appointeth to euerie such turne foure halfe turns, which may bee otherwise called single turnes. And note, that in turning, diuers things are to be obserued. First, that he bring in the contrarie leg vpon the other, and that he carrie his legs neither too high nor too low: also that hee keepe his ground, neyther pressing forward, nor yet reeling backward in his turning: also that he keepe his bodie in one staie, writhing neither head, neck, nor any part of his bodie, but to come in whole and rounde together, and to close his turne in so narrow a rome as may be. But first you shall teach him to make the single or halfe turnes in this sort and order here following.

When

When you are come out of the ringe, trot your horse right out in the middle furrowe vnto the place of stop, and there after that you haue stopt, turne him faire and softlie on the right hande, taking roume inough at the first as I shewed you before, for feare of making him stiff necked: that done, giue him the like turne on the left hand, and then turn him againe on the right hand, remembring alwaies to begin with the right hand, and to ende with the same, and se that in euery turne he bring in the contrarie forefoot, vpon the other forefoote. As for example, when you turne him on the right hand, cause him to lift vp his left forefoot, and to bring it in ouer the right forefoot, which you shall do by helping him with your voice, or with the sound of your tongue, before taught in the first booke the eight chap. in saieng to him, turne here, and by striking him with your rod moderatelie vpon the left shoulder. And when you turne him on the left hand, helpe him with your voice or tongue as before, and with your rod on the right shoulder to bring in the right forefoote ouer the left forefoote: which act, Grison calleth Incauallare, which is so much to saie, as to lappe one thing ouer another.

And note, that though your horse at the first doth not bring in his contrarie foot ouer the other orderlie, but perchance vnder the other, yea and that with knocking his leggs together: it maketh no matter, for the greefe thereof shall be a good correction vnto him, and in time shall make him to amend his fault. But if he be harder to turne on the one hande than on the other, then you shall helpe him with the contrarie legge or spurre, or with your rodde, by beating him vppon the contrarie shoulder: and sometime to make him to close his turne truelie, it shall be needfull to helpe him with the clocking stroke of your heeles or spurs. Which kinde of helpe is necessarie for two causes: first, for that it will make him to turne roundlie, as well with his hinder partes, as with his forepartes: Secondlie, because some horse is so quicke and so limelie, as when he is touched but onelie on the contrarie side, he will turne perhappes with to stiffe a necke, loking the contrarie waie, or contrariwise, he will wrie his head or necke to much on that side that he hath to turne, or else turn beyond the place, and out of the right path in which he should close his turne.

Albeit

Albeit such helpe is not commonlie to bee vsed, but at certaine times when some great necessitie requireth it, for the first helpes are more kindlie, and therefore ought to be more ordinarie. But if he be so hard of one side, as the foresaid helps cannot make him to turne when you would haue him, then you may vse these corrections here following.

How to correct your horse when hee is harder to turne of the one side than on the other, which fault is called of the Italians, Credenza. Chap. x.

But first I thinke it méete to shew you the causes of that fault, and then how to correct it, and you shal vnderstand that there be diuers causes, wherof one may be the naturall inclination, whereby euerie horse is more apt to turne on the left side than on the right. Secondly, the hardnes of the bit pinching his mouth on the one side may so grieue him, as he dare not turne on that side. Thirdlie, lacke of knowledge how to handle his legs, and to reine with his necke, may cause him to turne so frowardlie, and so vnwillinglie, as he feeling himself neuer so little wearie, will turne no more at that time, for any thing that ye can do. But to say the truth, wearines and lack of breath, may cause any horse, be he neuer so well broken to doe the same. Fourthlie, the ignorance of the Rider in helping him otherwise than he should do, may make the horse so amazed, as he knoweth not what to doe, vnderstanding not the riders intent. Fiftly, the horse may be euill broken, and thereby be made harder of one side than another: for then if he be angred neuer so little, he will not turne perhaps on that side that you would haue him, and the worse, if he shall perceiue that you be afraid of him, and that you will suffer him to haue his owne will, and to turne which waie he list: for that shall be an occasion to make him more stubborne, and to continue still in his fault. But now, though Grison here according to euery one of these causes, could appoint proper corrections (which indeed were the best order of teaching) yet to auoid confusion (as he saith) he will not so do, but rather teach you such generall kindes of corrections as may amende that fault, of what cause soeuer it proceedeth.

And

And because that euerie horse, as I said before, is more apt by nature to turn on the left hand, than on the right, he sheweth you first how to correct the hardnesse of the right hand in this sort here following.

Make your horse in some newe plowed ground to tread out two ringes, like vnto these hereafter figured, which differ not so much from the two rings before described, in shape, as in the order of treading of them. For whereas you were wont before to go twise about in the right ring, following still the right hand, and then to go twice about the left ring, following then the left hand: now you shall go about each ring three times, following still the right hand in both of them.

And whereas before, foure goinges about made a large turne, now fiue goings about shall do no more than make a large turn: and the reason is this, for if you should go out of the right ring, at the second turne for to enter into the left ring, and would follow still the right hand (as you must doe) then should you lacke a good deale of closing the second turne, as you may easilie perceiue by considering a little the figure in the right ring, whereof I haue marked the place where you should goe out for to enter into the left ring, with this letter A. and the place of closing your turn with B. betwixt which twoe letters is contained that portion of the circle which should be wanting: therefore you must needes goe thrice about, to the intent the second turne may bee fullie ended, and as for the ouerplus, it shall make no matter. To these rings is also added a middle furrow with two places of stopping and turning, meete to manege your horse therein, to and fro, whereof wee shall treate hereafter in his due place more at large.

Thus

Thus you may continue shifting from ring to ring, and following still the right hande, vntill you se that hee beginneth somewhat to pride, which I beleeue he will doe, by that time that you haue trotted him about 45. times, which make seuen large turnes and a half, that is to saie 21. times about the left ring, and 24. times about the right ring: or if that sufficeth not, you may trot

trot him 27. times about the left ring, and 30. times about the right ring, which maketh 9. large turnes and a halfe, and that is a conuenient number for any horse hauing that fault, though he be right good of breath. And when he hath ended his ring turns, you may trot him right out in the middle furrow, the length of a good carriere, and there after you haue made him to stoppe and to aduance, you shall make much of him, and suffer him to stale a good while, holding as well then, as at all other times (vntill he hath amended his fault) the right reane of his bridle shorter than the other. And after that he hath so pansed and is quiet, you shall cause a footman that hath some skill to stande right against him with a sticke in his hande, and whilest you moue your fist to turne your horse on the right hand, the footman in the same instant shal strike him with his sticke on the left side of his nose, & not to leaue beating him vntill he turne, not forgetting alwaies while he beates him, to vse that sound of the tongue which I taught you before. And to the intent that the horse at such time reare not right vppe, he may beate him sometime vppon the leggers, by which so molesting him doubt ye not, but that you shall make him to turne as he ought to do, & hauing turned you shall first make much of him, and then trot him backe againe in the same path or furrow, euen hard to the edge of the rings from whence ye came. Whereas you shall appoint another footman to stand with a rod in his hand, to the intent that when you haue stopt your horse againe there, and are readie to turne him (which must be still on the right hand) the footman may rate him, by saieng, Turne villaine, or such like words: yea, and if neede be, also beat him in such sort as the other man did before. But if your horse be very hard to turne, then to make him do it the more easilie, you may at euery end of the path after that he hath stopt & aduanced, make him to go backe about two paces, and in his going back, turne him, but after that he beginneth to fall somewhat vnto it, beware that ye vse not ouer much make him go back, least he get an euill custom to make his turns altogether abandonate, and too much vpon his hinder loines.

Thus by trotting him vp and downe, and turning him two and fro fiue or seuen times together, when you come out of the ringes, you shall in the space of three dates throughlie correct that fault, which

which fault, if it were not ouermuch, I would not wish you in his going to and fro, to turne him euerie time on the right hand, but first on the right hand, and then on the left interchangeablie, but so, as the first and last turne may be alwaies on the right hande, vsing alwaies such helps and corrections as are aboue said. But if your horse be harder to turne on the left hand than on the right, then begin first with the left ring, obseruing order meere contrarie in all things to the first, which I am sure that you can doe of your selfe without any more words.

Sixe other corrections for the fault aboue said, wherof the first here followeth.

YOu may also correct that fault without riding him in any ring, or otherwise in this sort.

First, cause him to be brought into some long narrow waie, inclosed on both sides with hedge, dike, or wall, and there, after that you haue reined vp his head, by staieng the reins of the bridle with the button vpon his neck, if he be hard to turne on the right hande, fasten the one end of a good long cord or thong to the middle part of the bit on the right side, and tie the other end vnto his surcingle on the same side, straining it good and hard, for to make him bow his necke: that done, let him so remain in the middest, betwixt you and him that brought him, or some other whome you shall thinke meet, hauing each of you a rodde in your hand, with the which rods you shall chase him betwixt you from one to another, by striking him alwaies when hee commeth towardes either of you, vpon the left side of the nose, and no where else, and that shall make him turne on the right hand, not forgetting alwaies when you beate him, to helpe him with the sound of the tongue before declared, and you shall see that in a very little while, the onelie sound of the tongue, and the sight of the rods, will make him to turne of his owne accord, without any beating at all. Yea the sound of the tongue it selfe is so good a warning vnto him, as if he be once accustomed thereunto, he will not tarie the beating: and though sometime he happe to fall downe in his turning it maketh no matter, for he will rise againe alone: yea and that shall be a very good correction vnto him. And when you see that he beginneth to wax somewhat wearie, loosen the thong from the

the surcingle, but not from the bit, and immediatlie get vppe on his backe, taking the lose ende of the thong in your right hande, which shall serue in stead of a false reine, and trot him forth the length of 10. or 12. paces, and there stop him, whereas one must stand with a rod in his hand, readie first to threaten him, and then if nede be to beat him therewith vpon the left side of his nose, for to make him turne. And in the same instant you shall not onelie helpe him with your tong, but also by straining a little the thong which is in your right hand. And hauing turned, trot him backe againe to the place from whence he came, whereas may stand also another footman to helpe him at the stop, as the former dide, to turne againe on the same side: or for lacke of another man, you may turne him the second time on the left hand, and so trot him forth towards the first man.

Thus trotting and turning him to and fro, you shall correct him quicklie of that fault: neither shall you neede to vse the helpe of straining the corde or thong in his turne aboue twice or thrice at the most. For the sound of the tong, the feare of the footmannes rodde, and the holding of the right reine of his bridle shorter than the other, shall suffice. And note, that as the thong being put on the right side of the bitte doth correct the Horses hardnesse on the same side: so likewise if it be put on the left side it will correct the horse, that is hard to turne on the left side: for the sides & places of corrections onlie changed, the order is all one in both.

The second correction for the same fault.

You may also correct that fault by tieng a corde vnto the headstraine on that side that the horse is hard to turne, so as it may run through the ring thereof, to the intent that when you pull the cord, it may straine the horses head, and being let goe, it may slacke againe, the lose end of which corde, let some footman hold in his hand: and whilest you being on his back doe helpe him with your tong to turne, let the foteman pull the corde, whereunto if the horse be vsed a while, hee will afterwarde turne of himselfe, so sone as he shall heare the sound of the tong without the helpe of the cord.

The third correction of the same.

TAke a cord about a yard long, and tie the one end therof vnto the vppermoſt eie of the bridle on that ſide that the horſe is not hard to turne, and let it come betwixt his nether lip and neather gums, and ſo paſſe through the vppermoſt eie of the bitte on the other ſide, beeing ſtrained ſo hard as the horſe can well indure it, and there ſtay it, by making a knot onelie vpon the cord, hard by the cheeke of the bit, without caſting the cord about the iron, ſo as it cannot ſlip: the looſe end of which cord, when you ride your horſe, you ſhall hold in your hand in ſtead of a falſe reine, and ſo often as you pull your cord, & help him with your taong, you ſhall force him to turne whether he will or not. And leaſt a cord perhaps will gall your hand, you may if you will make it all of leather, ſauing that which muſt bee in the horſes mouth, for otherwiſe it would not grieue him.

The fourth correction.

THe fourth correction is, by putting the kirble hooke on that ſide that the horſe is moſte harde to turne: on the backſide of which hook, nert to the horſes lip, would be made two little ſharpe prickles, faſhioned like cockes ſpurs. Which kind of hooke Griſon calleth in his language, Guancietto: or if you will you may ſet thoſe prickes on the backſide of the linke whereon the ſaid hook hangeth, which link is made like an S. in this ſort S. ſo ſhal they prick him higher towards the mouth. And though ſome horſe is corrected by hauing thoſe pricks placed on the contrarie ſide: yet is it more kindelie to haue them placed where I haue ſhewed you before. Or in ſtead of both theſe waies, you may cauſe three little nailes to bee ſet on the backſide of his portſmouth, and it ſhall be as good. But beware in any wiſe that ye ſéeke not to correct this fault, by putting any iron engin within the horſes mouth as ſome men doe, which will cauſe a bit to be made of purpoſe, hauing the one ſide rougher than the other, which is the high waie to diſtember the horſes mouth, and to make him ſo as he ſhall neuer ſtate well vpon any bit. Notwithſtanding a ſcatch welted on the inſide is very neceſſarie ſometime for ſuch purpoſe, as I will ſhew you hereafter, when I come to ſpeake of the diuerſitie of bits, and whereto they ſerue.

The fift correction.

IF he wil not turn on that side that you would haue him, then let him turne on the other side, as he will himselfe: and after that he hath begun, let him not leaue. But beat him vpon the head betwixt the eares, and all to rate him with your voice, forcing him to turne continuallie on that hand, so fast as he may driue, euen till he be almost out of breath, and readie to giue ouer for verie wearinesse, and you shall see, that with a little help, he will be easilie intreated to turne on the other side: which doone, you shall make much of him, and being once well corrected after this sort, it is possible that he will neuer haue that fault againe.

The first correction.

GO into some soft ground newlie plowed with déepe furrowes, and there first pace him faire and softlie to & fro, the length of a maneging course: then followe on with a good round trot, and when he will not turne on that hand that you would haue him, all to rate him with a terrible voice, & beat him with a cudgel vpon the hed, betwixt the eares, and vpon both sides of the head, and most vpon that side whereof he is most easie to turne, prouoking him to turne the other way, which if for all this he will not do, then without any respect, sometime runne him, sometime trot him, and sometime gallop him, as fast as hee may fling, now right out, now ouerthwart, and now round about as you your selfe shall think it most néedfull, not leauing to beat him, nor suffering him to rest in any place, vntill you haue gotten the maistrie. And though he chance to arme himselfe to run awaie with you, whether ye will or not, neuer care for it, but rather correct him so much the more with your voice, in rating him, and crieng out vnto him, and afterward stop him, prouoking him in that your anger once againe to turne, which if he will not doe, then renue againe the selfsame correction, not leauing him vntill you haue made him to turne as he should doe. And to the intent that in his turning he reare not right vp, you shall beat him with your rod from time to time betwixt the forelegs: but if he turne frælie about without stop or staie, then make much of him, suffering him to pause a while: that done, you may pace him too and fro faire and soft, and so often as hee will not turne orderlie, vse

ſuch haſtie correction as before. And in ſo doing, I doubt not, but you ſhall breake him of that fault the firſt daie that ye ſhal ſo ride him: yea, perchance in leſſe than an houre: for there is no way to be compared to this. But when you begin to take this waie, you muſt determine with your ſelfe not to depart the fielde, though you tarrie there from morning vntill night, vntill you haue cleane broken him from that fault. For otherwiſe you ſhall confirme him in his ſtubbornneſſe, and make his faulte incureable. Thus we haue ſpoken hitherto of ſingle turnes: it reſteth nowe therfore that we talke ſomewhat of whole turnes & double turns, for wee ſhall haue occaſion to talke more of ſingle turnes when we come to treat of the order of maneging.

Of the whole turnes and double turnes, how and when to teach your horſe to make them. Chap. xvii.

After that you be com out of the rings, & that your horſe hath ſtopt, aduanced and pauſed a while, in ſuch place and order as is aforeſaid: then whileſt he is quiet, & ſtandeth euen with his bodie, giue him two whole turnes on the right hand, one immediatly after another, helping him with your tongue, or with your rodde vpon the contrarie ſhoulder, or elſe with the calfe of your left legge, and ſeldome with your Spurre. That done, giue him other two whole turnes on the leſte hande, vſing like helpes, and then two turnes againe on the right hand, and then ſtaie a while, making much of him. And ſee that in his turning, he bring ouer the contrarie leg orderlie, and that in cloſing his turne, he ſet his head euen where it ſtood at the firſt. And note here, that you may begin the double turnes two manner of waies, for you may chooſe whether you will haue him turne at the ſecond or third bound of his aduancing, or elſe at the firſt bound, which indeede requireth not ſo much obſeruance of time and meaſure as the other doth.

But if your horſe bee not very apte vnto the double turnes, it ſhall not be amiſſe to ride him into ſome long lane or way, and at the hither end therof, immediatlie vpon his ſtop, to giue him one or two whole turnes faire and ſoftlie on the right hand, that don, to put him gentlie forwarde about two paces, and there to giue him the like turnes on the left hand, and then to go two paces fur-

ther

ther, and there to turne him againe in like manner on the right hand, and so to follow on in turning him still at euery two paces end, helping him alwaies with your tongue, with your rod, with the contrary leg or spurre: yea, and if neede be, with the closing stroke of both spurres. And when you are come to the further end of the lane or way, giue him three whole turnes, whereof the first and last must be on the right hande, and so leaue off for that time. But note this by the way, that whensoeuer he failech in so going, to turne well on any side, that then you must turne him again at the next two paces end on the same side, and also correct him with the contrarie spurre, continuing still so to do, vntill he hath amended his fault, which if he doe, you shall make much of him. And if the way or lane be short where you breake him, then being come to the furthest end thereof, you may turne backe againe in the selfe same path, vsing the former order in making him to turne at euery two paces end, so long time together as you shall think méete. After this, you must séek to make him swift in his double turnes, for it is not inough to bring ouer the contrary legge orderlie, and to turne truelie and decentlie, but also he must turne swiftlie and roundly, for which intent you shall vse this order following.

Make him to trot or gallop the length of a short Cariere, and there stop, causing him to aduance once, twice, or thrice together, that done (helping him with your voice and lefte spur: yea, and if néede bee, with the closing stroke) first turne him loftilie on the right hande, setting his head that way his taile stode, which shall be halfe a turne, and there staie a while, then close it vp with another halfe turne on the same hand, setting his head and all his bodie in the same path euen as it was at the first, & then make him to doe as much on the left hande, and so to change from hande to hand, ending alwaies on the right. And by often soliciting him in this sort, you shall not onelie make him to turne swiftlie, but also loftilie, or of an indifferent height, euen as you liste your selfe. And when you sée him readie inough in this, then you may cause him to close the whole turne roundly together, without making any stoppe or staie at the first halfe turne. If your Horse know how to handle his forelegges, then giue him on each hande

two whole turnes, allowing two halfe turnes to one whole turn, and at the end of euerie thirde halfe turne, helpe him with your tongue, rodde, or contrarie spurre, and if neede bee with the closing stroke, so shall hee close the last halfe turne, both quickelie, roundlie, and comelie: but as the two laste halfe turnes woulde bee done speedilie, so would the two first halfe turnes bee doone leisurelie. For in those it sufficeth that the Horse goe orderlie with his legges, and keepe the right path. And by obseruing this order a while, you shall see he will bee so swifte and readie in the first turnes as in the laste. Notwithstanding, for a good time you shall not vse to hasten him, but onlie at the closing of euery whole turne. And when he can once make all the turnes in such order, and so swiftlie as they should be done, then ordinarilie giue him on each hande three whole turnes, whereof let the first bee so faire and softlie as may bee, so shall he carrie his forelegges orderlie, and be better able to keepe a swifte time and measure, in accomplishing the other two turnes. And though that any of these two waies heretofore prescribed, is maruellous good to make ante Horse be hee neuer so dull, to bee readie and nimble in the double turnes: yet must you be able to discerne by your owne discretion which of them is most meet for euery horse, and for what purpose. For if you would haue your Horse to yarke in making the double turnes, this waie is not so meete for that purpose as the first, for in euerie halfe turne you must helpe him to yarke once: so that in euerie whole turne hee shall yarke twice. That is to saie, once forward and once backeward, which he cannot do, vnlesse he pause somewhat at euery halfe turne, according to the first order before taught. But if your Horse be harde and dull of the spurre, and vnapt to the double turnes, then if he can bring ouer the contrarie legge, ride him into some straight waie, or else into the plaine field, and there make him to turne so fast as hee can, and helpe him continuallie with your spurres, beating him therwith in such sort as he may haue bloudie sides, by the girthes: and giue him on each hande seauen whole turnes or thereabout, obseruing alwaie that number wherewith you first began, helping him also with your rod on the contrary shoulder. And although he seemeth as then to care but little for it: yet in riding him againe the next

daie

daie following, when his sides shall bee sore by meanes of the former pricks, being then cold and tender, and not hot, as they were the day before: you shal see that the spurre will quicken him after another sort, and make him to remember wherefore he was lasse corrected. And so by vsing afterward the ordinarie helps, you shal make him so readie in the double turnes as you will desire.

And you may vse like order also, when the horse is verie lineslie and sensible of himselfe: sauing then you shall not need to ride him againe the next daie following. For the first time shall suffice to make him obedient to your will, and make him keep such measure and time in your turning, as he ought to doe. It is good also, if the horse be too slowe, sometime to trot him out at the length of a short maneging course, and when hee commeth towarde the end thereof, to gallop him, and at the stoppe cause him to turne the first halfe turne, and then immediatlie vpon the same, to close the other halfe turne on the same hande, and then make much of him, suffering him to pause a while: yea, and it is possible that without pausing at all, you shall perceiue such a readinesse in the horse, as you may follow on with another whole turn, & so to giue him on each hand two whole turnes, remembring alwaie to hasten him with your tong, so much as you possibly may, which shall not onlie make him readie in his turnes, but also to knowe the very meaning of the helpe, which after that hee hath once obtained, you shall need no more to giue him these maneging courses: for then he will turne at any time that you will haue him.

Helpes and corrections méete to bee vsed for the amending of such faults as most commonlie happen in making the whole or double turnes. Chap. xviii.

IF your horse at the closing of any turne vseth to swarue of any side, then a little before he stop, or else in his very stopping, strike him with the calf of your leg on the same side, and if need be with your spurre, pricking him more or lesse as you shall see it needfull, & that shall force him to make a iust stop, and to keep the right path: so as afterwarde hee shall need no such helpe, being indeed then superfluous. But although he can stop well, and be very readie of turne: yet whensoeuer he doubleth helpe him alwaies with your tong, and sometime with

your rod and leg: and that ſhall haſten him and make him to goe ſwiftly about, and to cloſe well.

If your horſe ſoltereth with his legges in his turning, for fault of not bringing ouer the contrarie leg, or lifteth not his feet orderly, or turneth not faſte inough about, then euerie time that hee hath ended his turne, ſtay there: and ſo ſoone as he is ſtaied, if his turnes were not well made of any ſide, firſt ſtrike him once or twiſe with the ſpur on the contrarie ſide, then giue him as muche with the ſpurre on the other ſide, and laſt of all, on the ſame ſide that you ſtroke him firſt, and keeping him ſtill in the ſame pathe, turne him againe as you did before, and at the laſte you ſhall ſée, that by this correction he will amend his fault, and ſo doing you ſhall make much of him.

But if your horſe in his doubling, maketh his turnes too much forward, and you can by no ordinary meanes bring him from it, then ride him with his head toward ſome wall or trée, & when you are within a very little of the ſaid wall or trée, ſtop him and turn him, forcing him alwaies to cloſe his laſt turne toward the wall or trée, ſo ſhall he be forced to keepe ſtill one place in his turning. Or you may if you will, without anie wall or trée correct that fault, by bearing a ſtiffer hand on him than you were wont to do but ſo as you diſtemper not his mouth, & loke how much ground that he incroched in cloſing of his turne forwarde, when he hath done, make him to go as much againe backeward. Or you may correct him thus: ride him into ſome wet ground, newe plowed with deepe furrowes, and there pace, trot, or gallop him the length of a maneging courſe, vntill ſuch time as he hath made a plaine path, and beaten out euident marks of a ſtop, and there cauſe him to double: and you ſhall ſée, that after the firſt time, he will not bee ſo haſtie in preaſing forward, becauſe it will greeue him to leaue the beaten path to plunge into the mire. And lok as the making him to go backward, will correct him of his ſtealing forward, ſo you may correct his réeling backewarde in his turning, by making him in the end to go as much forward. You may alſo correct both faults thus: if he girde forwarde, then make him to double in a plaine ground at the foot of ſome hill, and to cloſe his turns vpward toward the hill. And if hee reele backwarde in his doubling,

bling, then cause him to close his last turne from the hill ward.

Of the Chambetta. Chap. xix.

BVt besides all this, there is one other point belonging to the turnes, as well single as double, but speciallie to the single turnes of a manege, which giueth a better grace vnto them than any thing else: and that is when the horse holdeth vp his forefoot on that side that he shoulde turne: whilest he bringeth ouer the contrary legge, and setteth it not downe againe vntill hee hath closed his turne: which Grison calleth La Ciambetta, for by this meanes hee shall carrie both his forefeete clean aboue the ground, and turn a great deale better than when he trasleth his feet vpon the ground. For which feate, for that in our tongue we haue no proper name, I will therfore call it from hencefoorth the Chambetta, and you shall teach your horse to do it in this sort: ride him into some narrowe way, or cause a dike to be made of purpose in maner and forme following. First let it be so long as a common maneging course, not aboue 12. inches deep and in the bottom one foot and a halfe broad, from which bottom, the two sides, and the two ends of the dike must rise sloping: so as it may be a great deale broder aboue at the brinks than beneath hauing the very fashion of a trow, bote or punt: or if you will you may make it of a greater depth, but it must haue breadth in ꝯ top accordinglie: and the rider must be the more circumspect as wel in bearing his bridle hand, as in timelie helping of his horse. The dike then being thus made, ride into it, and there giue your horse on each hand two or three turnes, whereof alwaies let the first be faire and softlie to the intent that hee may close the others more spædily, according to the order of doubling, as I taught you before: & you shal see that in closing his turns, the narrownes of the rome shall so trouble him as for feare of knocking his contrary leg against the other, he shall be glad to lift vp the other leg, and so to come aloft with both legges together aboue ground. But you must beware that in stead of lifting vppe his legs, he reeleth not backward, nor in his turning goeth clean out of the dike: for that were a foule fault and much against your purpose, and therefore you must beare a temper at hand, and be ready to vse such kind of helpes, corrections and cherishings, as are meet and necessary in

that

that behalfe, and haue bin heretofore taught. And to make him the more readie therein, you may often pace or trot him to & fro in the dike, & turne him at each end on both handes, or but on one hand only, changing hands at euery end. Yea & ſomtime it ſhalbe good to turne him in the ſame dike at euery two paces end, as I taught you before, ſpeaking of the double turnes: and hereby the Horſe will take ſuch a cuſtome, as he will doe the like whenſoeuer you ſhall prouoke him therunto, by helping him either with your tongue or contrarie ſpurre, or with both ſpurres togither. And in ſteade of this dike, you may if you will, ſeeke out ſome narrowe golled waie by rage of water, which ſhall be as good, ſo that it bee neither too deepe nor too ſhallow, the ſides whereof would be ſome what ſhoring: yea, both ſuch golled waie, dike & euery other way, where you pace or trot your horſe to and fro, ſhould be the better, if the ground at the ſtopping place wer ſomwhat hanging down the hill: ſo ſhould it keep him from going either forward or backward in his turning. Alſo if your horſe haue bin ſomwhat broken before and know what correction is (otherwiſe it will be too harde for you to do) you may teach him the Chambetta ſtanding ſtill in the ſtable in this ſort. Take a ſtick in your hand, and go and ſtand on the right ſide of the horſe, harde by the manger to the which he is tied, & knock him with your ſtick on the right foreleg, ſomtime vnder the knee, ſometime in the mids of the ſhank, ſomtime on the nether ioint, and ſomtime behind in the bowing of the ham of the ſame leg, helping him continuallie with your toong or voice, in ſaieng vnto him, Hup, hup: and neuer leaue him vntill you haue made him to hold vp that leg, which when he doeth, beate him no more, but onlie threaten him by wagging the rod, to the intent he ſhould not ſet downe his foote, but hold it vp ſtill ſo long as you ſhall thinke it good. And ſo often as he ſetteth it down vnbidden helpe him and correct him as before, neuer leaning vntill he hold it vp again, which whileſt he doth, you ſhall do well to make much of him, by clawing him with your rod on the withers, for that ſhal incorage him to do the like another time. And if you would haue him to do the like with the left leg, then ſtand on his left ſide, and vſe the ſelfe ſame order. And when you ſee that he will doe it with both legs, only for feare of the ſtick, then you may alſo teach him

to

to do it for feare of the spurre, in this sort. Stand on his right side with the rod in your hand, and cause another to stand on his left side with a spur, naile, sharp sticke, or goad in his hand, and in the same instant that you do beate him with your rod on the leg: let the other prick him in the common spurring place with his spur, helping him with the sound of his tongue or with his voice, as before, you holding your peace: and so soone as the Horse shall heare that sound or voice, and feel the stroke both of rod and spur, he will lift vp his right legge, which when he hath done, you shall change sides, and in the same sort make him to doe as much with his left legge. And thus vsing him a while, you shall make him to lift vp which you will, so soone as he shall heare but the sounde of your tongue or voice, and feele the spurre on the contrarie side, without the helpe of ante man to stande by him with a rod in his hand: yea and to holde it vp still a quarter of an houre togither. And perhaps manie times he will do the same without the helpe of the spurre, being afraide to sette it downe, so long as you are there present. But if (as it happeneth many times) the Horse when you prick him so with your spur, will not lift vp the contrarie legge, but only the legge of the same side that you spurre him: then in the same instant that you spurre him, if hee bee not curst and shrewd, strike him with your foote on the contrarie leg, which warning will make him remember himselfe. Or else for a more surette, you may haue a sticke in your other hand, and knock him therewith on the inside of his contrarie leg: and beside that euerie time that he so erreth, either in not lifting vp the contrary leg, or else in lifting vppe the other, remember alwaies to double the stroke of the spurre, and that shall so correct him, as afterwarde if you do but make an offer to touch him with the spurre, it shall suffice to make him to hold vp the contrarie leg, so long time togither as you will your self. Neither care you for the frowardnes of ante horse, but the more froward he is, the more roughlie correct him. But though your Horse in this sort may learne the Chambetta in one daie: yea, and perchance in lesse than three houres: yet to kéepe him in vre withall, and that he may do it afterward the more readilie in his maneging, it shall be necessary to spend euerie day one houre with him in the stable, in making

him

him to hold vp firſt one legge, and then another. Thus when you haue taught your horſe to doe the Chambetta in the ſtable: you may alſo teach him to doe it abroad, being vpon his back, in this ſort. When you are mounted, cauſe him to ſtand ſtill a good prettie while together, and beare a ſteddie hand vppon him, making him to reine trulie with his head, and appoint a ſotman to ſtande on your right ſide with a ſticke in his hand, and in the ſame inſtant that you helpe your horſe with your tong or voice, let the ſoteman beat him vpon the right legge with his ſticke, not leaning ſo to moleſt him vntill he lifteth vp his foot, which doing you ſhall make much of him, by clawing him on the withers. That don, let the ſotman change ſides, and make the horſe doe as muche with his left legge, and when the horſe vnderſtandeth thoſe helps, then beſides the helpe of your tongue or voice, you may touch him alſo with your contrarie ſpurre, which if it doth make him to hold vp the true leg, then ſpurre him no more, but make much of him, and when he knoweth once the helpe of the ſpurre, you ſhall neede no more the helpe of the ſotman with his rod, for then if he erreth at any time, by helping him with your tongue or voice, and by doubling the ſtroke of the ſpurre, you ſhall quicklie make him to amend his fault. And beſides theſe helps, for a more ſuretie if néed be, you may haue a rod in your hande and correct him therewith your ſelfe, like as the ſotman did before: but I beléeue that after a little exerciſe (if the horſe be not too dull) the helpe of your tong and the moouing onelye of your contrary leg will ſuffice, without any more buſineſſe. And to kéepe him in vre withall, remember alwaies whenſoeuer you take his backe to make him hold vppe firſt one leg, and then another, ſo ſhall hee afterward bee perfect when he commeth to be maneged, either with ſingle or double turne: but he ſhall do it the more readilie in a double turn, if he be vſed to do it firſt in the ſingle turne. It ſhall bee very neceſſarie alſo to trot him, to gallop him, and to turne him to and fro in ſom ſuch waie as is before deſcribed, by meanes whereof, if the horſe be of any gentle nature, and therewith ſomewhat ſtaide of head, he may quicklie learne the Chambetta, without the helpe of any of the former inuentions, which notwithſtanding are neceſſarie for thiſts ſake, to anſwere the diuers qualities of horſes: for all

horſes

horſes will not learne alike.

The new Addition touching the Horſes turne.

BVt now you haue to vnderſtand that all theſe helpes and corrections before mentioned doe chiefly ſerue for ſuch kinde of turne as was vſed in Griſon his dates, which turne the horſe did make vpon his heeles or hinder feet, not mouing from their place, though the horſe with all his whole bodie, necke and forefeet, did turne rounde about ſo manie times as you would haue him, euen like a paire of compaſſes, whereof the firme foot ſtandeth ſtill not mouing from his place, and the other moueable foote turneth about, to make either a whole or a halfe circle as you would haue it, then which kinde of turne, none in mine opinion can be more ſwift, nor yet ſo ſwift: for by this waie I haue made my horſe to make on each hand 20. or 30. turnes one after another, whirling about ſo ſwiftly, as my head hath been ſo dizie therwith that I could hardlie kéep my horſes backe. Notwithſtanding other riders ſince Griſons time, haue miſliked this kinde of turne, ſaying that it is not ſtrong nor ſure, and ſpecially vpon grauelly or ſlippery ground, and therefore do more commend that turne which the horſe maketh by mouing all his foure feet, and his whole body togither at one inſtant, when he turneth, whereto you may bring him by riding him euery day, firſt in a large grauell pit, and afterward in a faire ſandie waie, vſing the helpe of a footeman, and all ſuch other helpes as are before ſet down, vnleſſe it be the hollow or gulled way before mentioned, for in that the horſe muſt néeds make his turne altogither vpon his hinder feet. Thus hauing taught you the order of treading the ring, of ſtopping, of aduancing before, of parking behind, of turning, with ſingle turne, and double turne: yea, and that with the Chambetta alſo, I think it now meet to ſhew you the order of maneging, and how many kinds of maneges there be.

Of maneging, and how many kindes of maneges there be. Chap. xx.

THis Italian word Maneggiare, is as much to ſay in Engliſh, as to handle with ſkill, as when we ſaie, he can handle his horſe or weapon very well: amongſt the Italians it is taken as a generall worde, comprehending foure

especiall

eſpeciall kindes of maneging: whereof one is, when they make their horſe to double his turnes, which they call Raddopiare: an other is, when they make him to gallop the fielde, going in and out, as they do in ſkirmiſh: the third is, when they make him to leape aloft, and to fetche diuers ſaultes: the fourth is, when they pace, trot, or gallop him a good while too and fro, in one ſelfe path, the length of 20. or 30. paces, or thereabout, turning him at each end thereof, either with ſingle turne, whole turn, or double turne: which Griſon calleth, Maneggiare a Repoloni. But wee Engliſh men doe onelie call this laſt kind a manege, and that abſolutelie without any other addition. For amongeſt our horſemen this word manege or maneging, ſignifieth none other thing, but only that foreſaid kinde of gallopping and turning to and fro in one ſelfe path. And therfore we vſe commonlie to ſaie, This horſe can manege well, or make a good manege: whereof there be alſo three kinds, that is to ſay, manege with halfe reſt, manege with whole reſt, and manege without reſt. Which Griſon termeth thus, Manegio a mezzo tempo, a tempo, & contra tempo. The manege with halfe reſt is, when you cauſe your horſe at the end of euery maneging path, after he hath ſtopt, to aduance twice together, & at the ſecond bound to turn: wherby you reſt alwaies one bound. The maneging with whole reſt is, when you turne him at the third bound, and ſo reſt two boundes. The manege without reſt is, when you turne him immediatlie vpon the ſtop, without any tarriance at all, which onelie kind of manege our Engliſh riders moſt commonlie do vſe, and not the other two. Notwithſtanding they be verie neceſſarie and meete to bee vſed, according as the horſe is ſtrong or weake. For a very ſtrong horſe requireth the manege with the whole reſt: & the horſe of an indifferent ſtrength the manege with the halfe reſt: and the weake horſe the manege without reſt. But the manege with the halfe reſt is moſt neceſſarie of all, and the beſt meane to make a horſe perfect in the other two. But note, that in all three kindes of maneges, you muſt obſerue well thoſe generall precepts that I gaue you before touching the ſingle and double turnes. That is, to ſee that your horſe keepe alwaies one path, and one place of ſtop, and in his turning that he keepe his ground, and carrie his head, necke, legs, & whole

bodie

ſwarning on either ſide: and alſo that hee cloſe his turne roundlie, and in ſo narrowe a roome as may be. And finallie to ſée that as well in his turnes, as courſes, hee kéepe alwaies like time and meaſure, and that the one be not ſwifter than the other, and ſuch like. All which things, by vſing ſuch helpes and corrections as I haue partlie alreadie, and ſhall hereafter more at full declare: you ſhall eaſilie make your horſe to doe. Thus hauing ſhewed you howe manie kindes of maneges there be, and which they bee, and what you muſt generallie obſerue in teaching them: I will now declare vnto you the order of them all, beginning firſt with the manege of the haife reſt.

Of manege with haife reſt. Chap xxi.

When your horſe can ſtop well, aduance before, & turne readilie on both handes, then beeing come out of the rings, trot him right out, either in the middle furrowe vnto the common place of ſtop, or elſe in ſome other ſoft ground, the length of 20. paces or thereabout, and euen as he is readie to ſtoppe, helpe him with your voice, making him to aduance twice together, and at the ſecond bound, turne him on the right hand, helping him with your tongue, with the reine of his headſtraine or faiſe reine, with your rod, with the caiſes of your legs, or with your ſpurs, more or leſſe, according as occaſion ſhall require, and ſée that in his turning, he moue both his forepartes and hinder parts orderlie, bowing his houghes decentlie, which is the beawtie and chiefeſt grace of both turne and ſtoppe. That done, immediatlie trotte him backe again in the ſelfeſame path, vnto the place from whence you came. And there, after ſtoppe at the ſecond bound of his aduancing, turne him on the left hande and ſo followe on, obſeruing the like order, vntill you haue gone to and fro about twelue times, changing handes at euery time. And at the laſt ſtop of all, you ſhal cauſe him to aduance twice together and ſo depart: and this is the order of the manege with haif reſt. In the which, after that he hath béene ſomewhat exerciſed, you ſhall not néed to helpe him when he is ready to ſtop, but onlie to beare a ſteddie and ſtraight hande, and to helpe him with your tongue or voice in his turning. And you ſhall ſée, that he of himſelfe

ſelfe will turne roundlie and with a good grace, without any more helpe.

Of manege with whole reſt. Chap. xxii.

When after that he can make the manege with halfe reſt well, if he be of much force and very light withal, you may teach him to make the manege with whole reſt, cauſing him at euery ſtop to aduance thrice togither, and at the third bound to turne, and at the laſt ſtoppe of all, to aduance againe thrice togither, and ſo to depart. But vnleſſe he be very ſtrong indeed, I woulde wiſhe you to turne him moſt commonlie at the ſecond bound, rather then at the third, ſo ſhall he be able to turne the more readilie, and to keepe the better time and meaſure in his turning.

Of manege without reſt. Chap. xxiii.

But if your horſe be of no force, or of a heauy moulde, then you may teach him the manege without reſt, by turning him ſuddenly vpon the ſtop, wherein alſo hee ſhal neuer be perfect, vnleſſe he be firſt vſed to the manege with halfe reſt: but remember that in the manege without reſt you cauſe your horſe at the laſt ſtoppe to aduance once at the leaſt. For it is none error at al, but a comlie ſight in al 3. kindes of maneges, at the laſt ſtop to aduance twice or thrice. And note that in al theſe three kinds of maneges, it is praiſe worthie, when the horſe in his aduancing doth bow his boughs behind, & turneth round with the Chambetta. For which purpoſe it were not amiſſe to manege him ſomtime in ſuch place, wheras the grounde is at ech end of the maneging path ſomwhat hanging. Note alſo, that in maneging your horſe, it is no ſmall helpe vnto him in euerie turn that he maketh, to accompany him with your perſon in this ſort following. When he turneth on the right hand, turne you your left ſhoulder towards his left eare, more or leſſe as need ſhall require, keeping your body for all that ſtill right in the midſt of the ſaddle, ſo as the reines of your back may directlie anſwer ỳ ridge bone of his backe. Neuertheles, when you feele him to bend his hinder boughes, then lean you ſomewhat backward, for that ſhal make him to cloſe his turne the more roundly and ſwiftlie. And when he turneth on the left hãd, accompany him with your right

ſhoul-

shoulder, toward his right eare, obseruing like order as before. If your horse bee very weake or feeble, either by nature, or by ouermuch trauell, then it shall be good sometime to manege him with a soft pace, and not to trot him, vsing him for the most part to that kind of manege which shall be most meet for his strength, least by often changing, you cleane disorder him, and bee neuer become perfect in any of them. When your horse can make all these three kinds of maneges, both with soft pace, and with trotte: then you may manege him in any of the said kinds with a gallop, giuing him on ech hand but one single turne, and see that the first and last be alwaies on the right hand. And a little before you turne him, remember to hold your rod on the contrarie side, whereby your horse shall know on what side to turne: and at the stop make him to aduance, helping him with your voice, or with your rod, or with the euen stroke of your spurs, or of the calfes of your legs. And in two of the foresaid kindes of maneging, if your horse be ready of his heeles, and light behind, you may also make him to yarke, as well at his stop, as in his turne: that is to sale, in the manege with halfe rest, and in the manege with whole rest: for in the manege without rest it cannot be decent. But in the other two you may at the first or second bound of his aduancing, help him with your voice, rod, or spurres, to yarke there once, and at the closing of his turne to yarke againe: so as at euery end of the maneging course, he shal yark twice, once forward and once backward. Or if you will, you may cause him to yarke at ech end but once, and that would bee at the closing of his turne, setting his head that waie that his taile before stode. But before you gallop him, it were good to pace him, and to turne him faire and softlie in the same path to and fro, about twelue times: which shall make him the readier when he is afterward maneged with a gallop, yea and if you did the like, after that you haue maneged him with a gallop so that you first suffer him to breath a while, it should do him no harme, as you shall well perceiue if you manege him againe the nert day following. And beware that in maneging your horse, ye gallop him not at the first to swiftlie: for so shall he neuer be able to continue with one time and mesure, neither in his courses, nor yet in his turnes, for after a while euery one shall be slower than

another, which should be verie vnfermie, and therfore good respect would be had to the qualitie of the horse, whether he be able to endure a swifte manege or not. For if you perceiue that he is naturallie strong, and hath a good mouth, and can turne readilie on both hands: then you may be the bolder to giue him a swift manege: but if he be too liuelie, or else be laden with great cheekes, or hard of mouth, or if he bee feeble of backe and legges, then albeit he seemeth to haue a gentle mouth, by means perhaps of good breaking, yet you must gallop him with the more respect. Notwithstanding, if he hath strength in his backe and loines, then the other defects be not so much materiall, but that with good breaking he may be managed any maner of way: but the surest way for all maner of horses is, to manege him with a soft pace, or with a trot, and seldome with a gallop.

And note, that if there be any stones in the maneging path, or on ante side of his stopping place where he turneth, it is not good to take them awaie, for the feare thereof shall make him to lift his feet the better, and to go the more surely: yea, if there be none at the place of turning, it were necessary to put one or two great ones: for the feare of those stones would make him to turne with the Chambetta. When your horse is perfect in al the things aboue said, then if you wil, you may manege him sometime in and out: like the writhing of a serpent, ~ but vse it not often, and speciallie with a yong horse.

Hitherto we haue spoken of maneging with single turnes: now therefore we will talke a little of maneging with double turnes.

Maneging with double turnes. Chap. xxiiii.

ALthough maneging with the double turnes apperteineth rather to the stirrer, than to the horse of seruice, yet it shal not be out of time to talke thereof in this place.

And note, that you may teach your horse to manege with the double turns two maner of waies, whereof the first is in this sort. Pace him or trot him right out, the length of twentie or thirtie paces as you did before: and when you come to the place of stop, let him aduance once, twise, or thrise together, according as the kind of manege which you would haue him to make, shall require, giuing him there a double turne, and halfe a turne on the

right

right hand, which maketh in all fiue single turnes: or if he be verie strong, you may giue him two double turnes, and half a turn on the right hand, which amounteth to nine single or halfe turns. That done, trot him backe againe in the selfesame path, and giue him the like number of turnes on the left hande, and so follow on still, continuing the same order so long as you thinke your Horse can well indure, and then at the laste stop make him to aduance twice or thrice together, and so leaue. The second waie is thus. When you come to the place of stop, giue him at the first but half a turne on the right hand, and suddenly changing hands, let him close the double turne on the left hand: that done, trot him back againe in the selfe same path, vnto the other end, and there likewise giue him halfe a turne on the left hand, and immediatly let him close the double turne on the right hand, and so to followe on with double turne, and halfe turne, mockt throughout: and at the end let him stop and aduance, as before is said.

And note, that in both these waies of maneging, in the beginning, the turnes would be made faire and softlie, to the intent the horse may carrie his legs the more orderlie. When your horse can double, being maneged with a soft pace & trot, then you may make him to double after one of these two sorts, being maneged with a gallop, which must be more or lesse swift according as the horse may indure, and be able to keepe the like time and measure, so well in the courses, as in his turnes. For the double turns and specialtie two on each hand, do straine a horse, his loines & sinews very sore, if he be weake or not very light of nature. Wherefore if your horse haue any such defect, and yet you would haue him to double in his manege, then for a while, let him vse to make on ech hand but one double turne: so shall he turne the more roundlie, and close his turnes the better, yea and with the more strength of his back, which will not decaie so some with that, as with making two double turnes: and in processe of time it is possible that you shall make him to turne so often together, as you will your selfe. But if he be of so grosse a mould, as he is not apt to close his turn wel, then vse him in no wise to double, least that he neither make double nor single turne as he ought to doe.

Of the helps and corrections which are meet to be vsed for the redresse of such faults, as commonly chance in maneging. Chap. xxv.

And firſt, as touching the ordinary helpes, I ſay, that if your horſe haue bin well broken before, and taught to turne redily on both hands (as he ought to be before you manege him) then he néedeth ẏ leſſe help: for ſo ſoon as he ſhall heare the ſound of your tongue or voice, and féel the ſtaieng of ẏ bridle, he wil not tarry to be ſpurred, but turn roundlie of his owne accord: notwithſtanding according as hee is more or leſſe ſenſible in the beginning of euery maneging courſe that he maketh, it ſhall not bee amiſſe to helpe him with the euen ſtroke of your ſpurres: yea, and alſo to doe the like a little before hee commeth to the place of ſtoppe, helping him alſo with your voice, for that ſhall make him to cloſe his turne with the better grace. But if he be dull and heauie, then it ſhall not only be neceſſary to help him in the beginning of eche courſe, but alſo in the midſt, and likewiſe at the end of the ſame, in ſuch order as is aboue ſaid. And in his turning, remember to helpe him when nede is, with the contrarie legge or ſpurre, and ſometime with the cloſing ſtroke of both ſpurres, as you haue béene heretofore taught. And when your horſe goeth out of the waie, and will not kéep the right path, then correct him with your rod, ſtriking him vppon the flanke, or with your ſpurre vpon that ſide that he ſwarueth. If your Horſe be yoong and not growne to his full ſtrength, it is poſſible that ſometime for his owne eaſe, he being come to the place of ſtoppe, will turne ſoner than he ſhould. Wherefore you ſhall do well at the ſtop to make him aduance twice or thrise together, and then to ſtand ſtill a while, making much of him: that doone, helpe him with your voice to turne, wherein if he alſo make too much haſte, and kéepeth no time, ſtate him againe vppon the ſame another while, and ſo you ſhall quicklie bring him from that fault, & make him to manege with what time and meaſure you will your ſelfe. And if your horſe haue that fault, by meanes that he is ouer liuelie and to raſh, there is no better mean to bring him from it, than by vſing him vnto the manege with whole reſt, and to ſtay a prettie while togither after that hee hath aduanced, making him alwaies to turne lowe by the ground, and to bring ouer the contrarie legge, or to turne with a Chambetta. Againe, there be ſome horſes ſo froward, and ſo ſpitefull, which by meanes of euill breaking

king, & ouermuch beating, when they come to the turning place, they will make either too large a turne, or else without time or measure. For correction whereof, vse to manege him with a soft pace, vntill he be almost within his length of the turning place, & then trot him swiftlie, or gallop him vnto the end: whereas, after you haue giuen him a turne truelie closed on the right hand, stay him a while, that done pace him forth faire and softlie, vntill he be almost at the other end, and then gallop him to the place of stop, whereas after he hath turned, staie him again like as you did before, and so continue maneging him still after that sort, vntil you haue gon to and fro eight times, and at the last stop make him to aduance, or if you will you maie after his first turne first pace him two or three steps, then trot him swiftlie, vntill he come somwhat nigh to the end, and from thence gallop him to the place of stop, obseruing that order in euerie course from the beginning to the ending, & afterward being somwhat amended of his fault, you maie after the staie vpon his turne, vse to gallop him all the waie, for a certaine season, vntill he be throughlie perfect in his turn: which when he is, see that you staie him no more vpon his turn, but immediatlie put him forward. For to staie vpon the turn, is vnseemlie and not to be allowed, but onelie for corrections sake. There be manie horses which through euill breaking when they are maneged, will turne their rumps and hinder loines, before they turne their forparts: for remedie of which fault, you shal vse these waies following.

Trot him right out in the furrow of some new plowed ground correcting him continuallie, and that not onelie in his going, but also when he is readie to stop, and likewise in his turning, sometime with the contrarie leg, and somtime with the contrary spur, and if that will not suffice to make him leaue his fault, then manege him alongst by some wall or tilt, and ride so nigh vnto it as you can. Which wall or tilt, in the first course would be on your left hand, and in the second on your right hande: and so changing from hand to hand, helpe him in ech turne with the contrarie leg, or spurre, more or lesse, according as neede shall require: or else manege him in such a fashioned dike as I haue before described, for to teach your Horse therein the Chambetta. And by one of

those waies, you shall make him to amend his fault, and to turne orderlie, as you would haue him.

If your horse in his turning vse to writh his bodie on that side he turneth as though he would fall downe, which is a very fowle fault, then manege him oft with a swift trot, either in the furrow of some new plowed grounde, or else in some pathe ouerthwart the furrowes: and at the first, turne him alwaies lowe by the ground, helping him with such helpes and corrections as are before taught, so shall you bring him to make a true turne, and iust in euerie condition.

You may also correct him for the selfesame fault, or for making to large a turne, by giuing him a chocke with the bridle on that side of his mouth that he so erreth. And for the most part such writhing turnes do chance in the manege without rest, wherein as they are vnseemelie to manie mens iudgments, so are they much more vnseemelie in the other twoe kindes of manege. Notwithstanding, if your horse be weake and feeble, then somwhat to ease him, you may suffer him whilest he boweth his houghes behind in his stopping, to write his bodie a hand breadth on that side that he turneth, so shall he close his turne the more readilie, but otherwise see that ye vse it not.

But if your horse in any of the maneges make a false turne, or turneth higher or lower then you would haue him: as for example on the right hand, then so soone as he hath turned, euen in his going forward, correct him once or twice with your left spur: yea and if néed be, with both spurs at once, and being come to the other place, turne him againe on the right hand, and so follow on with your manege vnto the place where hee turned first on the right hand, and there turne him on the lefte hande, by which changing of handes, you shall alter the common order of turning in maneging: which altering sometime is very necessarie, not onlie for the correction of the faultes aboue said, but also to knowe the obedience and readinesse of your horse. For if he be vsed alwaies to one order of turning, it is possible that he will not turne sometime on that hand that you woulde haue him: and if hee make a false turne on the left hande, then correct him by obseruing the contrarie order.

There

There is some kind of Horse, which when you haue maneged him ten courses to and fro, he will in the end suddenly force your hand, either by casting vp his head aloft, or by chopping it down, and so fall a running, not for that the bridle greeueth him, or for anie great desire he hath to run or to trauell, but onlie for that hee thinketh so to escape your hands, and that you should trouble him no more, but suffer him to rest. Which fault so often as he vseth, see that you sharplie correct him for it, without shewing him any fauour at all, not leauing to beat him vpon the head betwixt the eares with a good stick, and to rate him with a terrible voice, shewing your selfe fierce & cruell vpon him, vntil you haue brought him vnto obedience, and made him to know that running away will not helpe him. Which correction he should remember the better, if it wer his hap to deserue it, being maneged vpon a ground newlie plowed with deepe furrowes, the trauell wherein togither with the correction, would be so painfull vnto him, as he would beware euer after how hee ran awaie before his lesson were ended. And hauing thus subdued him, leaue him not so: but manege him afresh, first with a round trot, and then with a gallop, according as you shall see him in breath: and in the end make much of him, by which so vsing him, you shall see that afterward he will manege so long time togither as you will haue him and likewise be readie to stop at commandment, yea and if need be to stoppe in a Cariere, being run with an vnbirbled bridle.

How and when to teach your horse to passe a swift Cariere. Chap. xxvi.

Vntill your horse be perfect in all pointes before taught, and specially that he can stop well, & therwith aduance before, aswell in his trot as in his gallop: I would not wish you in any wise to run him, vnlesse it were in the verie beginning of his breaking, to giue him a Cariere or two, onelie to know his swiftnesse and disposition, and so to leaue off, vntill he be better broken and made meet to be run. Which when he is, you shall vse this order following: ride him into some faire plaine sandie waie, void of all stumbling stones: and to acquaint him with the waie, pace him faire and softlie the length of a good Cariere, which must bee measured, according as the horse is

made. For if he be a mightie puissant horse and great of stature, then the Cariere would be the shorter. So likewise must it bee, when you would haue him to bounde aloft in his Cariere: but if he be made like a Jennet, or of a middle stature, then the cariere path may be the longer, yet not ouerlong. At the end whereof, let him stoppe and aduance, and at the second bound turne him faire and softlie on the right hand, and so staie a little while. Then sodainlie saieng with a liuelie voice, Hey, or Nowe, put him forward with both spurres at once, forcing him all the waie to run so swiftlie and so roundlie as he can possiblie, euen to the ende, to the intent he maie stop on his buttocks. That done, turne him on the left hand, & pace him forth faire and softlie vnto the other ende of the Cariere path, and there stop him and turne him againe on the right hand as you did before, and so leaue.

And note, that the chiefest points to be obserued in the running of a Cariere are these: first, to see that the horse gather roundly, and go smoothlie aiwaie, bearing his head steddilie: secondly, that he run swiftlie: and thirdlie, that he stop lightlie. Whereunto you shall bring him by no meanes so well, as by often vsing him to tread the ringes with a very swift trot, which shall make him so nimble of his legs, so swift and so staied of head, as when he commeth afterward to be runne, it shall be no griefe vnto him: which was well obserued by the great rider, M. Cola Pagano: who vntill he saw his horse well staied of head and throughlie broken, he would neuer runne him. For after that he had spent foure monethes or halfe a yeare, yea, and perchance a whole yeare in breaking him, in such order as I haue heretofore taught, hee woulde teach him to runne in lesse than eight daies, and that so swiftly, so smoothlie, so stronglie, and with suche a steddinesse of head, and lightnesse at stop, as it could not be amended. Yea, and when he would haue an horse to excell and be very fine indeed: he woulde teach him nothing from the beginning to the ending, but that he should do it first perfectlie well vpon a soft pace: and then vpon a trot, and seldome or neuer vpon a gallop vnlesse necessitie so forced. And aboue all things he would be sure neuer to manege him with a swift gallop, nor yet to make him passe a Cariere. But after that he sawe him perfect in the rest, he would appoint him to

his

his Rider, who could require nothing but the horſe was readie to do it, were it to manege with ſingle turne, or double turne, or run as many Carieres as the Rider would haue him, with ſuch order and time as it was maruellous to behold. And as I would not haue you to run your horſe before he be throughlie broken: ſo after that he can run, I would not with you to exerciſe him therin aboue once in two monethes: yea, and if it were more ſeldome the better, and ſpeciallie if he be naturallie hard of mouth. For nothing doth diſtemper an horſes head and mouth ſo much as often running, and it greatlie diminiſheth his ſtrength: and if his hinder legs be weake, it maketh him alſo to ouerreache, which is verie perillous.

The order of bounding aloft, or leaping, how, and when you ſhal teach your horſe to leape. Chap. xx bii.

ALthogh the rules before taught, do ſuffice to make a horſe of ſeruice: yet if your horſe be light, a ſtirrer, and nimble of nature, you may beſides theſe for pleaſure ſake, teache him manie other proper feates. As to abound aloft, and to yarke withall, to gallop the gallop galliard, to fetch the Capriole, to do the Coruetti, and ſuch like ſaultes, whereof I purpoſe heere ſomewhat to treat, thinking it now méet ſo to doe and not before, becauſe that vnles your horſe be firſt perfect in the former leſſons it were in vaine to teach him anie of the leſſons following. And firſt, as touching leaping or bounding aloft, you ſhal vnderſtand that to do it with a good grace, and as it ought to be done; the horſe had not onelie néed to be made light by Art, but alſo to be light by Nature: for in his leaping, he muſt aduance himſelfe, gathering his bodie round togither, and riſe euen from the ground, kéeping his head at one ſtate, and in his due place: and when he leapeth, he muſt yark withal. Which if you would haue him to do at the ſtop, you ſhall help him in his aduancing, and ſpeciallie when he riſeth aloft at the ſecond bound, with the euen ſtroke of your ſpurs, and with your voice, yea and with your rod alſo, by ſtriking him therwith, ſometime behind on the mid rump, and ſometime on either ſide of his rumpe, where he ſéemeth moſt to hang: and if hee riſe not lightlie inough before, then beate him therewith vppon the right ſhoulder, by means of which helps you ſhall ſée him immediatlie

diatlie to bound cleane aboue ground, gathering his bodie ſhort togither, and to parke withall. And note by the way, that the helpe of the calfe of your legs will make ſome horſe to riſe higher than the helpe of your ſpurres: and therefore in ſuch caſes your owne diſcretion muſt be vſed. But in the beginning, ſo ſone as he hath made one true ſault or leape, and parked withall, forget not to make much of him, ſuffering him to ſtaie vppon it a good while, without moleſting him any more for that time: yea rather, you ſhall do very well to light off his backe euen there. And ſo cauſe him to be led from thence faire and ſoftlie into the ſtable, or at the leaſt, if you will not light off, to depart with a ſoft pace: ſo ſhall you incourage him againſte the next time to doe the like, or elſe better. For vntil your horſe vnderſtãdeth your mind, & knoweth perfectly the order of leaping, & howe to gather vp his body ſhort and round togither: it is not good to force him ouer much, but onlie at the end of his pace, trot, gallop, or Cartere, to helpe him, as I ſhewed you before, to make two, three, or foure leapes, and no more, ſo ſhall they be both loftie and ſeemelie. Whereas otherwiſe in making many, he may hap to do them faintlie, lazily, and without any good grace: yea and perchance not without danger of rearing right vp, wherin a hanging ground would do good ſeruice: but then at the firſt, it woulde not be too much inclining, or ouer ſteepe downe. Notwithſtanding, if your horſe be light and a ſtirrer by nature, you may take the more of him, and increaſe the number of his leſſons as you ſhall thinke good. Hauing then onelie care that he keepe his ground, that he ſpring not on either ſide, nor diſorder his head but beare it ſteddilie. In which thinges he muſt be made perfect before by often trotting the rings in ſuch order as is before taught. And then being ſtaied of head, you may by vſing the former helpes, cauſe him in a lufty ſtrong gallop, at euerie two paces ende to bound aloft, once or more, as you liſte your ſelfe, but ſo as he may doe it well, keeping one ſelf time and meaſure from the beginning to the ending, and that the laſt leap be with no leſſe force then the firſt, but with more force if it may be. And therefore the number of his leapes, and the length of his race would be meaſured according to the horſes ſtrength, and as he is in breath and able to endure. And this kind of gallop is called, the gallop galliard.

And

And when your horſe is once perfect, you need not to gallop him but ſildome, ſo ſhall he gallop the more ſtrongly, which would be done when you come out of the rings. In the which, for that cauſe you muſt trot him at that time the fewer times about: and ſo you ſhall ſee that at his comming out he will enter into his galloppe with a luſtie courage, and bound all the waie of his owne accord, at euerie two paces end, euen vntill he come to the place of ſtop: or at the leaſt if he doth not this, I am ſure that helping him but onelie with your voice, he will not faile to fetch two or three leaps at the ſtop, without any more buſineſſe.

How to teach your horſe to do the Capriole or Goats leape, and the Coruetti, and alſo how to make him go ſideling ſo well with his whole body, as with his rumpe only. Chap. xxviii.

GApra, in Latine or Italian, is a beaſt which we call a Goat, which beaſt being diſpoſed to plaie, vſeth in his running a prettie kind of iumping and doubling with his legs aboue ground, making a certain ſemblance of yarking, and yet yarketh not indeede. Which kind of ſault or leape becauſe the Italians haue not onely counterfeited in their daunſing, but alſo haue taught their horſes to imitate the ſame, (for when the horſe boundeth aloft he muſt aduance his rump, and make as though he would yarke, and yet dooth not) it is called therefore by the name of Capriole, which if you will, in Engliſh you may terme the Goates leape: but forſomuch as Goates bee not euery where to repreſent that kind of leape: I woulde wiſhe you therfore for your better vnderſtanding, ſometimes to behold your little lambes whileſt they runne and plaie together, and you ſhall ſee them liuelie to do the ſame.

The Coruetti is a certaine continuall praunſing and daunſing vp and downe ſtill in one place, like a Beare at a ſtake, and ſomtime ſideling to and fro, wherein the Horſe maketh as though he would faine run, and cannot be ſuffered. The name is deriued of the Spaniſh word Corua, which is as muche to ſaie as the Elbow or hinder heele of the horſe, becauſe in doing this feat he doth labour much vpon his hinder legs. Which kind of praunſing the Spaniards do vſe much vpon their Iennets, and ſpecially when

they

they ride ſhort, after the Turky faſhion: becauſe in that ſort it maketh the better ſhew, & they eſteem it ſo much, as they cal the horſe that can do it well, in their tong Hazedor, that is to ſay, a doer.

Thus for your better vnderſtanding, I haue thought good to interpret vnto you theſe two termes, Capriole and Coruetti, which two feates, becauſe they do not much differ, as Griſon ſaith, there is but one order in teaching to be obſerued in both. Wherefore if you would teach your horſe to doe the Capriole, vſe to trot him for certaine daies vpon ſome long hill, or hanging ground, and ſtopping him vpon the knoll of the hill, make him to aduance twice togither: that done, immediatlie helpe him with the ſound of your lips, to trot two paces further, and to ſtop, and to aduance againe twice, as he did before, and ſo to continue in ſtopping and aduancing twiſe togither, at euerie two paces end, all the length of the hill downward, and there ſtaie. Thus vſing him a while, you ſhall ſée, that afterward in ſtead of thoſe two trotting ſteps, at euerie time that hee ſtoppeth and aduanceth, if you helpe him with this word, Hup, and with your rod, he will gather vp his rump twice togither, and ſo go from ſtop to ſtop, aduancing both his forefeet and hinder loines, with time and meaſure, carrieng his forelegs orderlie, and ſo fetch the Capriole ſo oft times togither as you will: yea and by helping him with your rod a little behinde, you may make him at euerie time that he ſo aduanceth with his rumpe to yarke withall. But note, that if your horſe be weake and féeble in his hinder partes, it ſhall be beſt for him to make thoſe twoe trotting ſteps lowe by the ground: or elſe in his lifting to obſerue alwaies one time and meaſure, aduancing therwith orderlie, without gathering vp his rumpe, which kind of Capriole is not to bee diſpraiſed. In this ſort if your horſe be very light, & you your ſelfe therewith accuſtomed to ride ſhort vpon him, after the Turkie faſhion, you may teach him alſo the Coruetti: but if hee be great of ſtature, and that you ride long vpon him after our faſhion, then the Capriole is moſt meet for him, which Capriole being don lowe by the ground, doeth not differ much from the Coruetti, ſauing that in doing the Capriole, your horſe muſt alwaies be going forward. But he may do the coruetti, not onlie in going forward, but alſo in keeping ſtil in one place, whileſt he ſtandeth aduancing vp

and

and downe vpon all foure feete: yea, and sometime going backeward, and sideling, and euery waie. And to the intent he may do it the soner, it were not amisse somtime to make him go sideling with his whole bodie, by helping him with the contrary spur: as for example. When you would haue him drawe to the lefte side, then bearing your bridle hande euen and steddie, clap your right leg close to his bellie, and holde it there still, making him to feele the spur on the right side, for the which if you see that he mooueth his bodie such waie as you woulde haue him, then suddenlie pull awaie your leg from thence & make much of him: that don, make him to doe as much on the other side with your left leg, not leauing to molest him in that sort on either side, till you haue made him vnderstand the meaning therof. And so with a litle exercise, so sone as he shall feele you to staie your bridle hand, and to offer to touch him either with your leg or spur on the contrary side, he will go sideling so much or so little as you will haue him. But if you would haue him go sideling with his rumpe onlie, and not to moue his foreparts, which indeed is very necessary, and speciallie for a horse of seruice, to make him keepe his heade alwaies towards the enimie in fighting hand to hand: then besides the foresaid helpe of the contrarie leg or spurre, you must also turne your bridle hand somewhat on that side that you touch him. And you may also helpe him with your rod, by striking him therewith on the contrarie flanke behind. Note also, that you may make your horse to do the Capriole, in giuing him a lustie gallop, if you can help him at euery two steps to keep time and measure. But as I said before, vnlesse your horse be naturally light of his body, and nimble of his legs, it is vnpossible by Art to make him to do any of these things well, & to say the truth, they be things that may be very well spared, and speciallie in horses of seruice, which being once vsed to such delighting toies, do forget in time of need their necessarie feates. For when they are spurred to go forward, or to passe a Cariere, they fall a hopping and daunsing vp and downe in one place. Likewise, when in their manege they should make a speedie, round, and iust turne, either single or double, they will not turne but leisurely with the Coruetti, and therefore I would wish none of the Queenes Maiesties horses to be vsed to the Coruetti:

but

but such as are onlie kept for pleasure, whereof it is sufficient to haue in her highnesse stable two or three at the most.

Thus hauing declared vnto you what is necessarie, as well for the horse of seruice, as for the Stirer, & with what order to breake them: I thinke it meet also to shew you now in the end, howe to ride such a horse, being once throughlie broken in all the feates aboue said, to the best shew before a Prince or Noble man.

How to ride a horse to the best shew before a Prince, and where best standing is for him to see. Chap. xxix.

SOme do think it good for those that would see, to stand right before the stopping place, and some would haue them to stand on the right hand of the rider, euen with the stopping place, & some on the same hand, not euen with the stopping place, but lower downe toward the middle cariere, distant from the stopping place the length of a maneging course. Of all which three standings, that right before the stopping place, in my iudgement is worst, for two causes. First, for that the rom perhaps may be vnmeet to receiue any number of men: secondlie, it is perillous. For if the horse be hedstrong, and should chance to breake the kirble, the reines, or port mouth of his bridle, he might run headlong vpon the lokers on. And therefore I would not wish a prince or nobleman to take view of a horse in that place, vnlesse it were from a house, out of a window, or from some scaffold: but rather to stand on the one side toward the middle Cariere, and distant from the stopping place the length of a maneging course, so shall he stand without danger and see the beginning, the middle, and ending: and it should be so much the better, if he stand on the right hand of the rider: for so the rider at both ends of the maneging path, in maneging his horse shal turn his face alwaies toward the Prince, and not his backe. The place of standing then being thus appointed, and the Prince there readie to behold what your horse can doe.

Ride first faire and softlie toward the Prince, to do your reuerence: that done, depart with a good round trot toward the further end of the Cariere path, bearing your rod with the point vpward towards your right shoulder, according as I haue taught

you

you heretofore, and being come to the ende, let the point of your rod fall toward the lefte shoulder of your horse, and make him to turne an halfe turne on the right hande, and then to staie a little while: that done passe him forward, first three or foure steps faire and softlie, and immediatlie after, put spurres vnto him, giuing him a liuelie, swift, and lustie Cariere, and passe before the prince to the place of stop, whereas after that he hath stopped euen vpon his buttocks, then at the first, second, or third bound of his aduancing, according to that kind of manege that you will vse, or that the horse can do most readilie and can best indure: you shall turn him on the right hand, and so go back againe in the selfsame path the length of a maneging course, and there stop him and turn him on the left hand, and so obseruing alwaies one time and measure, manege him to and fro, as oft together as you shall thinke méet, but let the last stop be at the end where the Prince standeth, whoe shalbe then hard by you on the left hand. Or if you will, when you passe the Cariere, you may stop him somwhat short of the prince, and after that he hath aduanced, put him forward the length of a maneging course, & there according to the manege that you wold haue him to make, turne him on the right hand, and so come back againe in the selfe same path, vnto the place where you did stoppe him before, at the end of his cariere and there stop him, and turne him on the left hand, and so giue him to and fro, foure maneging courses: and if the horse be verie strong, you may giue him fiue. And by this meanes the first and last turne shall be on the righte hand, and the last stop also before the prince.

You may also stoppe your horse when you first runne him euen right against the Prince, or else two or three yardes beyond him, & so without putting him any further forwarde, in his aduancing to turne him on the right hande, and then to follow on with that kind of manege that he can most readilie make, not passing the number of two or four courses at the most, stopping sodenly vpon the last turne, which must be on the right hand where he stopt first, so shall the prince be on your left hande. And after that you haue stopt your horse, in which soeuer of these places it be, make him to double on ech hand once or twice together, and immediatly after, or else before, intertaine him with the Caprehole, and Coruetti:

but

but he ſhould doe the Capriole with a liuelier courage, if he were put vnto it, before he paſſe the Cariere and manege, which being both done, you may make him to double again before. But maneging and doubling after a cariere, belongeth to a horſe of great force: which indeed ſhould repreſent in all his doings the very order of fight obſerued in the fielde, which is but little vſed nowe a daies, becauſe of the generall weakeneſſe of our horſes. Therfore I will teach you another order of riding your horſe to the ſhewe, in ſuch ſort, as he ſhall ſeeme to haue more ſtrength then hee hath in deed: which is done onelie by obſeruing cleane contrary order to the firſt. For whereas you did firſt make him to paſſe a cariere, now you ſhall firſt manege him, not giuing him aboue fiue or 8. courſes, if you will haue them to be ſwift, or of like time, vnleſſe the horſe be the ſtronger, for then you may giue him ten or twelue courſes, and vſing any of theſe foreſaid numbers, you ſhall be alwaies driuen to make the laſt ſtop where you firſt began. And hauing aduanced, giue him either ſix double turnes, that is, on the right hand two, on the left hand two, and on the right hand two, or if you will, but three turnes in all, whereof the firſt and laſte muſt be on the right hand. And if he can do the Capriole wel, you may cauſe him to do it immediatlie vpon the ſame: neuertheleſſe, it were more eaſe for him to do it before he double. That done, go to the end of the Cariere path, and giue him a liuelie Cariere, ſtopping him a little before you come at the Prince, who ſhall ſtande then on your right hand, and after that he hath aduanced, let him double as before. For it is alwaies more eaſe for a horſe to double in the end of a manege or Cariere, then at any other time. Alſo after that he hath runne, ſtopt, and aduanced, you may let him breath a while in the ſame place, and then giue him what kinde of manege you ſhall thinke good, wherein good diſcretion muſt be vſed, to conſider the qualitie, ſtrength, and condition of the horſe, to the intent that order, time and meaſure, may bee kept accordinglie.

The end of the ſecond Booke.

Of the correction of vices in generall, Chap. i.

MInding to treat here of the corrections of such vices, as horses haue either by nature or ill custome: I thinke it most meet to begin first with those vices, that be incident to the chiefest partes and members of the horse, that is to say, the mouth, hed & neck, vpon the ordering or disordering whereof chiefly dependeth ỳ making & marring of the horse. But forsomuch as the most part of the vices of ỳ mouth are corrected by the qualitie of the bit: I purpose therefore to reserue them vntill I come to talke of the diuersities of bits.

Of the vices of the head and necke, and first how to correct your horse when he beareth his head or necke awry, Chap. ii.

I Will shew you diuers waies, wishing you when nede requireth to proue them all, & then to vse that as your ordinarie remedie, which you shal know by experience to do your horse most good. First, vse to correct him with the contrary spur, as for example. If he beareth awrie on the left hand, strike him once or twice with the right spur, turning inward your bridle hand somewhat towarde the right side: and if he beareth awrie on the right hande, then vse the contrary order. But if he be verie stiffenecked on the right side, and soft, plieng or bowing on the left, then vse to hold the right reane shorter than the left, in such order as is taught you before in the chapter of the bridle and reanes in the first booke. You may correct him also by giuing him suddenlie a chocke with the bridle in his mouth, vpon his neather gums on the contrarie side, and you may giue him such a chocke two maner waies, that is to say, either by chopping downe your bridle hande on that side that he erreth, giuing him the chocke on the contrary side, and so pull vp your hand againe immediatlie into his due place: or else by turning your hande onlie inward, and straining the bit hard to his neather gummes

on the contrarie side without anie chopping downe of your hand at all, which kind of correction, if it be giuen with a temperat and staid hand, it is marueilous good to correct the forsaid vice in any horse, of what sort soeuer he be. It is verie good also, and specially when he hangeth or boweth with his whole body, more of one side than of another, to hold the calfe of your leg alwaies close to his bellie on the contrarie side, nigh vnto the foregirt, to the intent you may be readie from time to time, not onelie to pricke him a little with the spur of the same leg, but also when neede requireth to touch him therewith well and sorelie. Whereof when you perceiue that he beginneth to haue some feare, and thereby to amend his fault, you shal do wel suddenly to remoue your leg from that place, & in that instant to make much of him. So that afterwarde if he doe but feele the calfe of your leg comming towards his bellie, he will immediatlie amend his faulte, and beare his head on what side you will haue him. You may also correct the stiffenes of his necke, by beating him with your stirrop vpon the shoulder, or with your foote vnder the foreshoulder, vppon the same side that his necke is so stiffe, which will make him to looke that way, to see what it is that so grieueth him which whilest he doth, let slacke the contrary reane, and suddenlie pull away your foot and make much of him, and vsing him so a while, you shal make him both to know his fault and also to amend the same. It is good also to correct him with the rod, by striking him therewith on the contrarie side, eyther in the flanke, or else more forward nigh vnto the fore girt. But the correction of the contrarie spurre is of a more efficacie, and much more commendable: notwithstanding for a need, you may vse both. And in any wise forget not, whensoeuer he hangeth more of one side than of another, to holde alwaies the contrary reane shorter then the other, but otherwise let the reanes bee alwaies euen.

And to the intent you may beare them alwaies euen from the beginning: ride a yoong Horse at the first with false reanes, which you may for the correction of your horse make either short or long of anie side at your pleasure, and yet hold your ordinarie reanes alwaies euen together, and of one length, as I told you before in the chapter of the bridle and reanes. And note, that it is

exceeding good to vse these corrections, whilest you make your horse to tread the rings, so often about on both hands as you shal think most requisit for his strength. And if he be very hard of neck on the right side, it shal not be amisse, whilest he treadeth the right ring, to laie your right hand vpon the midst of the right reane, & by straining it harder than the other, to make him to hold his neck that way whether he wil or not. And if he be harder on the left side, then to do the like with your left hand, whilest he treadeth the left ring, making your right hand for that time the bridle hand: notwithstanding, it were more sightlie to shorten the left reane, without shifting your hand in such order, as I haue tolde you before in the first booke. And to the intent you maie force him the more, to come wholie on that side that you woulde haue him, it were not amisse, in some place where none maie see you, to counterpaise him by bending downe your bodie and head on the selfe same side that the horse is stifnecked, slaieng your legs so as yee fall not, beholding alwaies his eie on that side, wherewith also he will looke you in the face, and thereby shal be forced to correct his owne fault, in turning his necke that waie that you would haue him, which kind of counterpaising, you maie vse sometime in riding him in and out the length of a mile: yea, also sometime when he treadeth the rings, not forgetting to turne your bridle hand also accordinglie. But if you woulde haue him to be iust of bodie, head and necke, quicklie then vse to trotte or pace him to and fro, the length of fiue yards, or there about, making him at euerie end to stop and to turne, helping him with your tongue, spur, or calfe of your leg, on the contrarie side, and sometime with the closing stroke, bearing alwaies a steddie hand, which woulde be moderatelie turned towardes the same side. And if you see that he doth not bring ouer the contrarie legge orderlie, bearing his head and necke euen and iust, then neuer leaue correcting of him with the contrarie spurre all the waie, vntill he come at the other end, and there make him to turne againe on the same hand that hee turned on before, continuing still to trauell him on the same side, vntill he hath amended his fault: which if he doth, then you maie turne him on both handes interchangeablie, so as his first and last turne bee on the right hand. And trauell him in such

sort to and fro, to the number of thirtie courses, or so long as you shall see him able well to endure, to the intent you may leaue him with a good mouth, remembring alwaies to make much of him when he doth well, and not to helpe him with the spurre, but when need shall require, but onelie with your tongue, which must be alwaies one.

How to correct your horse when he beareth not right the lower part of his head, called of the Italians, Mustacchio, and may be called of vs the Mosel, which comprehendeth both nose and mouth. Chap. iii.

If your horse then vse to carrie his mosell awrie: put three litle short nailes on the inside of his portsmouth, on the contrarie side, and ride him with a musroll, hauing also three like nailes: yea, and if he carry his whole head awry out of al measure, then put three like nailes also on his headstal on the contrary cheeke: for otherwise the first two corrections shall suffice. But if such vice hath been long rooted in him, then al three corrections shall be litle inough. And if the headstall and mosel be made of double leather, you may so fasten the nailes betwixt the two leathers, as the prickes shal be next vnto the horses cheeke, & the heades of them couered with the vpper leather. Or if you wil, you may put them in a thin plate of iron, made no broder than the leather, which plate being fastened to the inside of the leather, shal be the greater correction vnto him. But let him not weare those nailes aboue ten daies: for though you take them awaie, yet the place will be so sore where they stoode, as the horse will be afraide to beare his head anie more awrie, thinking that the nailes be there still to pricke him. And note, that such nailes will correct some horse, if they be put on the selfe same side that he wrieth his head, so well as though they were put on the contrarie side. It is good also to put such nailes on the backside of the linke, fastening the kirble hooke in such order as I told you before, in the xiiij chapter of the second booke. But to some horse, which perhaps through the negligence of the rider hath accustomed to carie his nose: yea, and also his necke cleane awrie, so as the muscle of his necke seemeth to be naturally bent & crooked: it is requisite not only to vse

the

the remedie aboue said, but also to tie the one end of a thong vnto the middle eie of his bit, or to the ring of his musroll on that side whereon he is so stiffe, and the other end vnto his surslingle, in such sort as I shewed you in the second booke, in the first correction of the Credenza: and so to lette him stande a longe while together.

And you maie also if you will, ride him for certaine daies tied in that sort, but then the thong would be strained somewhat straiter. Or in stead of the thong, you maie put on his headstraine or musroll, & tie the reans of that vnto the surslingle on his stiffe side, which shall be of more force. And vntill he carrie his head iust, let but one vse to ride him, & such a one as hath some skil, for al riders hands are not alike: and therefore often varieng of hands, maie make his fault incureable. Wherfore al the waies aboue taught, are inuented to helpe him that lacketh knowledge, or hath not a staid hand. For assure your selfe, that whosoeuer hath a good iudgment, a temperate hand, and can obserue such rules and precepts of riding as are before taught, he shal neuer néed anie of these inuentions, to correct either this vice, or anie other.

Certaine causes why it is better for a horse to beare his head vnder then right out, or to cast it aloft, and then how to correct him, if he will not bring in his head and reane as he ought to doe. Chap. iiii.

ALthough some do thinke it good, ý the horse should haue his head alwaies at libertie, and not to be restrained of his naturall fiersnes: yet I in no wise can allow it. For first you shall vnderstand, that his forehead is the strongest part of his head, and his nose or mosell is the weakest part, & tenderest, the more he thrusteth out his mosell, the more he distendeth his back, and hath the lesse force therein: and therfore can neuer make good manege, obserue time, keepe order, nor continue in breath anie while together, whereas by bringing in his mosell and the thrusting out his forehead, he aduanceth himselfe, and gathereth strength in his backe, vniting his force together: and thereby also sheweth lightnesse and nimblenesse in all his doings. Secondlie, he shall see his waie the better, and be in lesse danger

of falling when he runneth: and though he should fall, yet he shall be more able to recouer himselfe againe, than when hee holdeth his mosell right out. Thirdlie, in running against his enemie, he shall be able to do or suffer more with his forehead, than with his mosell being the tenderest part of him. Fourthlie, he shall not be so apt to reare right vp vpon euerie light occasion, as otherwise he might do. Finallie, the horse that reareth well, and bringeth in his mosell, shall alwaies be a great deale better staied, both of head and necke, and haue a better mouth, than he that beareth his mosell right out. Wherefore if your horse will not bring in his head at anie time that you stay him with the bridle hand, then holding your hand still at that staie, correct him sometime with your right spur, and sometime with your left, and sometime with both spurres together. And in the selfe same instant, it shall be good also, sometime by thrusting him with your right hande vppon the necke, to force him to bring in his head: but if he will not yeld for all that, then by pulling the bridle towards you, make him to go backe about three paces, and then to returne faire and softelie to his first place, continuing so to do a good manie of times together: and euerie time that he thrusteth out his nose, correct him in maner aboue said, neuer leauing him vntil you haue made him to amend his fault. And if he be verie harde to be brought thereunto, it shall be good to strike him sometime with your stirrup vpon the shoulder, or with your foot vnder the shoulder, holding it still there to make him loke that waie. But if you see that the pricke of the spurre doth cause him to bring in his heade: then make much of him, without molesting him anie more: and by thus vsing him, you shall make him to reane as you would haue him, either going, or standing still.

How to correct your Horse when he ducketh downe his head, and beareth too lowe, Chap. 6.

IF he ducketh downe his head whilest you stand stil in any place, then stay your bridle hand, and suddenly correct him with one spur alone, or with both together, not suffring him to remoue from that place: and also if he vseth that toie going, then correct him in like maner, without making

king him to alter his pace anie whit at all: not failing at euerie time that hee so dooth, to vse like correction. And if in ducking down his head, he beareth it more of one side than of another, correct him on the contrarie side, and not on that side whereon hee hangeth. And if he be verie hote and furious, then immediatlie after such correction, lay your hand vpon his necke, or withers, in token of cherishing him, and that shall keep him from running awaie: and so by suffering, he shall learne to know his fault, and to amend the same. But if your horse vse to ducke downe his head when you stoppe him: then beside bearing a temperate and staied hand, you must giue him the chocke of the bridle with the right reane: and in that instant correct him sometime with one spurre, and sometime with the other. That done, returne from whence you came: and from thence trot him, or gallop him to the selfe same place where you stopt before: and there stoppe him againe, holding the right reane in the midst with your right hand, being alwaies readie therewith to giue him the chocke vpon the right side of his mouth, and by mouing the bit faire and softlie in his mouth, sometime with the same reane: make him to know that you hold the reane in that hand of purpose. Whereof the Horse will be so much afraid, as hee will no more cast downe his head: and vntill he leaueth this fault, neuer faile in this sort to correct him: and likewise when hee doth well, forget not to cherish him. And though a false reane for this purpose would do wel, and specially for a colt, yet it is not so good a correction as to vse the ordinarie reane: but if to giue him the chocke with the right reane will not suffice to correct his vice, then giue him the chock vpon both sides of his mouth with your left hande, holding both reanes together: and by vsing sometime the one correction, and sometime the other, you shall make him to leaue that vice well inough.

How to correct that horse which doth ouerreach in his going, that is to say, doth smite his forefeete with his hinder feete. Chap. vi.

This fault is most commonlie incident to a young horse, and therefore, besides making his shoes shorter behinde than o-

therwise, they ought to be, you must also fauour him whilest hee treadeth the ringes, not increasing the number of his turnes, nor quickening his pace, but according as his strength, and breath shall require, which by often riding him a little at once, will increase euerie daie more and more. And then if he ouerreach whilst he treadeth the ringes, correct him with the spur on the contrarie side, to the turne which he maketh: but if hee ouerreach in going right out, then correct him on that side of his bellie whereon you see his neck to be most stiffe. And sometime you maie also correct him with your rod vpon the one or other shoulder. It is good also to make him to trotte or to gallop in some stonie ground: or else for want of such ground, to strowe the ring pathes full of stones of all sortes, that is to saie, both with great, meane, and small, and that will make him to lift his feete, in such sort as he shall seldome ouerreach. Notwithstanding, if his hooues be not verie sound and good: I would not wish you to vse this waie, for feare of riuing his hooues, which of our horseleaches is called a false quarter, and of the Italians, Falso quarto. But rather make him to leaue this fault by well feeding him, & by riding him moderatelie without taking ouermuch of him at once, to the intent he maie increase in strength and breath, which once had, then the griefe of his ouerreaching, will bee a good correction vnto him of it selfe. Moreouer, if you caused the ring path to bee digged full of staires or degrees, it would keepe him from ouerreaching. And somtime it were not amisse to make him go a swath ouerthwart the furrowes in some grounde newlie plowed with deepe furrowes. Thus hauing shewed you diuerse waies of correcting this fault, I wish you nowe to vse your owne discretion in choosing that which shall bee most meete for your horse, whose qualities you ought best to know.

Howe to correct that horse, which when hee is chastised for any fault with the spurre, vseth to shake his head or eares. Also how to know by the mouing of his eares, when he is maliciously disposed, and howe to correct him for the same. Chap. vii.

EVerie time that he so shaketh his head, or eares, when hee is corrected, double the strokes on the selfe same side, that you did

did correct him on before, neuer leauing him vntill you haue made him to hold his head ſtill, and patientlie to ſuffer ſuch correction as you giue him. And in no wiſe let any fault eſcape vnpuniſhed, but alwaies correct him immediatlie for the ſame, ſometime with the one ſpurre, and ſometime with both togither, and ſometime with one after another: the order of all which ſtrokes is taught before in the firſt booke, in the eleuenth and thirteenth chapters. If your horſe in his going lifteth vp one eare, and holdeth downe the other, and gareth as though there were a flie in that eare: then I aduiſe you take heede to your ſelfe. For moſt commonly when he doth ſo, he mindeth to play you ſome ſhrewd tote, as to plunge aloft, to run ouerthwart, or to fall downe, or to do ſome like deſperate act. Wherefore ſuddenlie interrupt him of his purpoſe, by giuing him two or three ſtrokes with the contrarie ſpur, on the contrarie ſide to that eare, which he moſt moueth. And ſerue him ſo, as often as he ſhall vſe that tote: and if it be abroad in the plaine field, it ſhould not be amiſſe in the ſelfe ſame inſtant that you ſpurre him, to chaſtiſe him alſo with a terrible voice, and by giuing him a chocke with the bridle on the one ſide of his mouth. Yea, and beſides all this, if he be verie froward and curſt, let not to correct him alſo with a good ſtick, by beating him therewith well & ſurelie vpon the head betwixt the eares. Which correction, though he be neuer ſo proud and ſtubborne: yet being giuen but once in time, and as it ſhould be, it will ſo chaſtiſe him, as hee ſhall be glad euer after to leaue ſuch fantaſticall toies, ſo long as you are on his backe. And ſo doing, forget not to make much of him, leauing him alwaies with a good mouth. But note, that ſome time a flie entring indeede into your horſes eare: or the pricking of his headſtall, maie cauſe him to ſhake his eare, or to hold it otherwiſe then he ought to do, meaning no ſhrewdneſſe at all: and then it ſhall ſuffice to correct him moderatelie with the contrarie ſpur, onlie to make him that he thinke no more vpon the flie, which perhaps ſtingeth him, or anie other thing that grieueth him, but to forget it, and ſo to attend his waie.

Howe

How to correct your horse when he whineth, intending to strike with his heeles, or to do some shrewdnesse, being in the company of other horses. Chap. viii.

ALso if your horse, when you are in the companie of other Horsemen chance to whine: or if you perceiue that he meaneth to doe some shrewdnesse, as to bite or strike, correct him immediatelie with the single stroke of the contrarie spurre, doubling the same according as occasion shall require, aswell in his going right out, as in his standing still. Albeit, if he shew any signe of shrewdnesse towards his fellows in marching forwarde, it were not amisse to correct him with the clinching stroke, and sometime by giuing him the check of the bridle, on the one side, or both sides of his mouth: and if that wil not suffice, then you maie all to rate him with a terrible voice, and correct him with your rod on the one or other flanke: yea, and perchance it shall be needefull also to giue him therewith a stripe or two vpon the head betwixt the eares.

Of restifenesse, of the kinds and causes thereof. Chap. ix

IF a Horse bee restife, it proceedeth for the most parte through the fault of the rider, and of one of these two causes: for either the Horse is too vile, or else too stout of courage. If he be vile, then being ouer wearied, hee will for faintnesse giue ouer, and go no further: but if hee be proud and stout, then feeling himselfe somewhat wearie, and out of breath, he will fall a leaping and parking, thinking to be eased of his trauell that waie: or perhaps will doe the like in the beginning, immediatly after his rider be mounted: and if he perceiue that his rider be afraid of him, then he will take such a stomacke vnto him, as he will suddenlie staie and stop there, maugre his riders head. Of which two kindes of restifenesse, that which proceedeth of vilenesse of courage is the worst. But there be some horses, not onelie stoute, and lustie of courage, but also ramege, that is to saie, hauing two minds betwixt going and not going, when they list: which kinde of horses, if they chance to become restife, they be worse than ante of the rest.

Remedies

Remedies against restifenesse procéding of vile courage. Chap. x.

IF your horses restifnes procœdeth of vile corage, then ride him into some long way or lane, closed in on both sides with a wal, dike, quickset, or bie hedge: but at the one end thereof, cause certaine men to stande behinde your horse, with staues and stones in their hãds: & if he will not go forward, then let them suddenlie strike him with their staues vpon his hams and legges behind, and likewise hurle their stones at the same places, all to rating him in that same instant with a terrible voice. During which time, you your selfe must sit stil, kéeping silence: and let them not cease beating and crieng out vnto him, vntill they haue made him to go orderlie forwards as he shoulde do: which when he doth, then immediatlie let them staie both hand and voice and make you muche of him, by clawing him on the necke. That done, make him to go from the one end of the lane to the other to and fro, about eight times, and then light off his back or elſe pace him faire and softelie to the stable: and for certaine daies, see that you vse none other order than this, vntill he bee cleane rid from that vice: wherein so often as he doth offend, returne you to the foresaid correction, for this is a proued and an infallible way to bring any horse from his restifenesse. Which correction you might vse also in the plaine field, in some new plowed ground, but for wearieng of the footmen, whose trauell should be greater there to follow the Horse euerie waie that hee flieth out, than in a lane. And the more that your horse goeth backewarde whilest he is so corrected, let the footman laie on the faster, and crie out the lowder: and besides that, sometime it shall not be amisse to turne his head toward that way that he would so faine flie out. And so in your anger force him, by beating him al the waie vpon the hed with a cudgell, & by crieng out vnto him, to gallop so hard as he can driue, the length of a good Cariere: and then turne him againe toward the waie from whence you began to gallop him, & make him to go forward, correcting him at that time, more with your voice, than with your cudgell. And if he goeth quietlie, then leaue crieng out & make much of him, for I am sure he wil be glad at length to yéeld, rather then to be so beaten: but if hee continue

stil

ſtill in his frowardneſſe, and will not go forward, then you maie giue him halfe a turne, and immediatlie by pulling in the bridle, make him to go backward about tenne paces in ſo haſtie wiſe as you can. That done, turne his head againe towards that waie in the which he would not goe forward, and then ſuddenlie put him forwarde, which dooing for the moſt part will make him to take his waie. And to the intent he maie bee the ſooner and the more thoroughlie corrected of this vice, you maie beſides all this, tie a good long cord vnto his taile, winding it about, like as you do when you trimme your horſes taile with a ribbon or lace, the laſt knot whereof would be faſtened togither with ſome of the heares, for feare of ſlipping; which knot if you cannot make, then tie the vpper ende of the corde vnto the hinder buckle of the ſaddle, ſeruing the crouper, and ſo ſhall it not ſlip awaie. The neather end of which corde muſt hang downe, and traile after the horſe vpon the ground. And when your horſe wil not go forwards, but goeth backward, let one of the footemen pull the cord hard vnto him, which when the horſe feeleth, the feare to be pulled and hailed will make him to ſpring forward. And ſo doing, the footeman muſt in the ſelfe ſame inſtant let go the cord, and (to be ſure) beſids the pulling of the cord: let the reſt of the footemen alſo all to rate the Horſe with their voices, laieng on with their ſtaues, and hurling their ſtones. And by vſing him thus a while, you ſhall correct him of his vice well inough.

Remedies againſt reſtifneſſe, proceeding of ſtubbornneſſe and ſtout courage. Chap. xi.

But if you perceiue that ſuch reſtifnes proceedeth of too much courage and ſtubbornes, which the horſe hath gotten through the fearfulnes of his rider: then ride him in ſome plain field newly plowed, there if he (whileſt you giue him his leſſon) chance to ſtop in deede, or minde to ſtop, and ſo to become reſtife: then immediatlie all to rate him with a terrible voice, beating him vppon the head betwixt the eares, and vpon the forelegs with a good ſticke. And the more reſiſtance that he maketh, in leaping or going ouerthwart, or ſeeking to fal downe flat, or to lie downe on the one ſide, or to doo anie other

thre wonelle, increase you his correction so much the more, aswell in rating him as beating him. And to molest him the more, giue him the ring turnes on the one side, or on the other, or on that side whereon he himselfe doth most leane: by meanes whereof you shall so tame him, as he seeing his resistance not to prevaile, shall be content from thencefoorth to go quietlie and orderlie. And in so doing, forget not to make much of him, both with your voice, and also by clawing him with your hand vpon the necke. That done, trotte him euen there to and fro, about tenne times: then gallop him, and last of all, pace him, failing not to correct him in like sort, so often as he shall offend in the like vice. But note by the waie, that when the horse once knoweth the correction of the sticke or cudgell: it shall suffice to correct him with a terrible voice, and speciallie if he be ramege, and of two mindes, against which fault there is no correction of more efficacie. For the voice correcteth without disorder: and it maketh the horse afraide without putting him in despaire, whereas the cudgell manie times maketh him desperate and faint harted, vnlesse hee be corrected therewith in time. After which correction hee must also be cherished, and much made of, to the intent hee may vnderstand that his vice was cause of his correction. For the rod vsed in this sort hath no small vertue. And note, that though the corrections taught aswell in the last chapter as in this, may indifferentlie serue to correct this vice, proceeding of anie of the two causes aforesaid, yet they be more kindlie vsed, when ech vice is corrected with his proper correction, according to the order aboue declared.

It is possible also, that you may correct this vice, by holding a sharpe naile in your hand, to pricke him continuallie behind on the rumpe, neuer removing the naile from thence, for anie resistance or striuing that he maketh, vntil he hath left his stobborn nesse, and is content to go quietlie. Which done, take away your hand, and clawe him with the same immediatlie vpon the necke: that done, you may pace, trotte, gallop, or manage him as you shall thinke good.

Other

Other corrections to be vsed against restifnesse, when the rider lacketh art, and knoweth not by order of riding, how to get the maistrie of his horse, and to make him know his fault. Chap. xi.

LEt a footman stand behind you with a shrewd cat tied at the one end of a long poll with hir bellie vpward, so as she maie haue hir mouth & clawes at libertie: and when your horse doth staie or goe backward, let him thrust the cat betwixt his thighs, so as she may scratch & bite him sometime by the thighes, sometime by the rumpe, and oftentimes by the stones. But let the footman and al the standers by, threaten the horse with a terrible noise, and you shall see it will make him to go as you would haue him: and in so doing be readie to make much of him. Also the shrill crie of a Hedgehog being strait tied by the foote vnder the horses taile, is a remedie of like force, which was proued by maister Vincentio Respino, a Neapolitan, who corrected by this meanes an old restife horse of the kings in such sort, as he had much ado afterward to keepe him from the contrarie vice of running awaie.

The like correction also maie be giuen with a whelpe, or some other lowd crieng and biting beast, being tied to the crouper, so as he maie hang downe vnder the horses taile, hauing a long corde fastened vnto him: which Corde passing betweene the Horses thighes, the rider shall hold in his right hand to molest the horse therewith, by pulling it, and letting it go as he shall see it needfull. Or in stead of such a beast, there maie be tied a peece of iron of a foote in length, or more, and three fingers broad, made full of prickes like thornes, with a corde fastened thereunto, as before. But note, that al these waies rehearsed, are not to be commonlie vsed, but onelie in time of neede, and that with great discretion: for otherwise you should but amaze your horse, and driue him into despaire, so as he shall neuer vnderstand your meaning. And to saie the trueth, they are of litle importance in respect of the remedies taught before in the last chapter: and therefore I would wish you chiefelie to vse them, being sufficient alone, I warrant you, to correct anie maner of restifnesse. Neither do I allowe the waies that men were wont to vse in old time, to correct a restife horse

horſe by tieng a cord with a riding knotte vnto the horſes ſtones, which cord paſſed vnder the horſes bellie vnto the riders right hād holding the ſame, and ſtraining it when need did require: which in deed is more hurtful than profitable, and therefore not meet to be vſed but in ſome extremitie, for the correction of a ſtubborn horſe accuſtomed to fal down in the water: of which vice we ſhal treat hereafter at large.

Of the contrary vice vnto reſtifeneſſe, which is to run awaye: of the cauſe thereof, and how to correct the ſame. Chap. xiii.

THe vice of running awaie, doth not onelie proceed of the hardneſſe and euilnes of the horſes mouth, but alſo manie times through the fault of the rider, not hauing knowledge, nor ſtomach, as I ſaide before, to tame a horſe that is of too liuelie a courage, and therwith perhaps hard of mouth, wherby the horſe getteth an euil cuſtom, either not to ſtop at what time as the rider would haue him, or elſe if he ſtop, to ſtop without order: for redreſſe of which vice, you maie vſe theſe remedies here following.

If you chance then vpon an old horſe accuſtomed to run awaie when he ſhould ſtoppe, you muſt begin to ride him with more reſpect then you woulde doe a colte: and firſte ride him into ſome long waie or lane incloſed of both ſides, and there teach him to ſtoppe, firſt vppon a ſoft pace, then vpon a trot, and afterwarde vppon a galloppe, and whenſoeuer he ſtoppeth, make him to aduance withall, by helping him in ſuch ſort as is before declared in the firſt booke. But becauſe of his euill cuſtome, ſee that ye runne him not of a long ſeaſon: and to be ſure that he ſhall not fall, or runne awaie at the ſtop of himſelf when you gallop him, appoint a footman to ſtand before him at the place of ſtopping, with a ſtick or cudgell in his hand, wherewith, after your horſe hath ſtopped, and aduanced, let the footeman by ſtriking him ſoftlie vpon the forelegs, but ſeldome vppon the ſnowt, make him to go three or foure ſteps backward. Whereunto if he be vſed a while, you ſhal ſee that afterward, ſo ſoone as he hath ſtopt, he ſeeing the footeman ſtanding there, and feeling the drawing backe of your bridle hand he will go backe of his owne accord, without anie beating at all.

And

And when he is once perfect as well in his ſtopping, as in his going backe, then gentlie giue him a Cariere, forcing him in his running, neither with voice, ſpurre, nor ſticke. And onelie when you come nigh vnto the place of ſtopping, helpe him with your voice to ſtoppe: and for the more aſſurance, let the footeman in the ſelfe ſame inſtant alſo helpe him with his voice, and threaten him with his cudgell. Yea if he perceiue that the horſe will néeds paſſe forward, let him giue him a good blow with his cudgell vpon the ſnowte, which blowe, I beléeue ſhall not néede, if you obſerue well the order before taught. For the helpe of your voice, the pulling in of the bridle, and the ſight of the footeman, ſhall ſuffice to make him to ſtop as he ſhould do: and in ſo doing, ſee that you make much of him, ſuffring him to pauſe a while. That done, make him to go backward, euen as you did before, when you did pace, trot, or gallop him. And after that pace him to and fro in the Cariere path, about fiue times, ſtaying alwaies at the acuſtomed ſtopping place, and ſo depart, and ſée that you run him no more of a good while after, but onelie vſe the order aboue declared, vpon a ſoft pace, trot or gallop, not forgetting alwaies to haue a footman at the place of ſtop, which footeman beſide his cudgell, maie alſo haue ſtones in his hand, to hurle at the horſes ſnowte, when need requireth. which I doe ſeldome, or rather neuer allow, vnleſſe he hath the ſtedfaſter hand: or if you will, you may cauſe two footmen to ſtand before him, each of them hauing a good long ſtaffe in his hand: at the vpper end whereof, woulde be tied a little bundle of ſtrawe, which being kindled, let the footman, when the horſe will not ſtop, thruſt them into his noſe, the feare of the flame whereof flaſhing before his eies, and the fire parching his ſkinne together with the ſmoke entring into his noſe will make him to ſtop. But though this correction for a néed is verie good: yet I would wiſh you to vſe the order before declared, which is ſufficient I warrant you, to make him ſtop with the bridle onelie, without the helpe of any ſuch extreame remedie.

It hath béene ſéene many times, that ſome rider hath corrected his horſe of this fault, by running him in the plaine fielde out of breath, continually beating him and ſpurring him in his anger, ſo as the horſe hath béene glad to ſtoppe of himſelfe, which correction

hath

hath taken so good effect, as the rider giuing him a iust Cariere, the nexte daie following, hath made him to stoppe with the least pulling in of the bridle that might be. But this correction is very perillous, and inough to kill a horse, and therefore is not méete to be vsed, but onelie when hee being too stubborne doeth ouermuch force you, and will nedes run awaie with you, whether you will or not.

Besides the first order aboue rehearsed, for his better correction you may also bit him according to the quality of his mouth, whereof we shall treat hereafter: and vnto that bit, or to any other, you may fasten a cord, which must passe betwéene his gums and neather lip in such sort as I shewed you before, in the second booke, in the thirde correction of the Credence. Of which corde, when his mouth is once throughlie corrected, he shall haue no néed, nor yet of anie other helpe but of the bridle onlie: but in any wise let him continue in his ring turnes, which being ended, vse him to stoppe and to aduance vpon the knoll of some hill downward. And note this by the waie as a generall rule, that the correction of the footman with a sticke or cudgell, is neuer to be vsed but when some great necessitie requireth it. For it may make the horse too fearefull, vnlesse the footman haue the more skill, and can obserue in his correction both time and measure.

How to correct that horse that will reare right vp, when he is corrected for any fault with a sticke vpon the head. Chap. xiiii.

SO often as hee vseth this vice, faile not you in the selfe same instant that he riseth and bangeth aloft, to beate him wel and surely with a good long stick vpon the fore legs, somwhat beneath the knées: yea, and if he be very much accustomed to this vice, it shal not be amis somwhat before he riseth, to giue him one blow vpon the legs at the least. And for the more suretie, and to make him the more afraid, it shall be needfull to beare the rod with the point downewarde right before his knées, alwaies in his sight: and being corrected a while after this sort, you shall sée that he shall leaue that fault well inough.

How to correct that horse that will fall downe to the ground when he is a little weary, or provoked to do any thing, which he would not willingly do. Chap. xv.

CAuse some expert footman hauing a good cudgel in his hand, to be somwhat nigh you, at such time as you ride your horse, to the intent that when he perceiueth the horse maketh any offer to lie downe, he may be ready with his cudgell or staffe to threaten him, and to fraie him with a terrible voice, iesture, countenance, and by cruelly loking him al waies in the face, more or lesse, according as time and occasion shall require: which will be such a terror vnto the horse, as whilest he loketh all amazed on the footman, he will haue no mind to lie downe but stand still, attending to his rider: who in the meane while must sit still in his saddle, without making any noise or moouing at all. Afterward, make him to trot the ring turnes, whereas you may cause also more menne to stande with staues in their hands, and to doe as the footman did before. And if he will needes fall downe there, then let them hold him vp whether he will or not, cruellie correcting him, both with their voices, and also with their staues, by beating him vpon the head betwixt the eares, or vpon any part of his body nert to hand. And if this doo not correct his vice, truelie the fault is in the footman, lacking perhaps such terrible voices, cruell lokes and iestures, or suche order and time of correcting, as should serue the purpose. And therefore it were good for such men to haue in their hands fiery staues, made in such sort as is before declared in the last chapter saue one, the feare & smart whereof will keepe him from lieing downe whether he will or not, which correction may be vsed for a restife horse, by fiering him behind betwixt the thighes.

This vice also maie be corrected by the helpe of a footeman, hauing in his hand a squirt ful of water, which he must squirt in the horses eies, when he offereth to lie downe, which is a good remedie also against the Credence. But these remedies last mentioned, are to be vsed of riders of small skill: for an expert rider wil correct anie vice by true Art, without the helpe of any such toies.

How

How to correct that horse which passing through any water will lie downe in the same, and what is the cause of such vice. Chap. xvi.

THis vice vndoubtedlie proceedeth of a naturall disposition, incident to that horse which is foled vnder the signe of Leo, which is a hot and fierie signe. Albeit all horses foled vnder this signe haue not this faulte indeede: neither can it be knowne by the Ostrich feather in the horses necke, nor yet certainlie discerned at the changing of his teeth, whatsoeuer other men saie, but onelie by his plaine lieng downe in the water, for the which fault there is no better remedie, than this here following.

Cause a seruant to ride him into some riuer or water, not ouer deepe, and appoint three other footemen with cudgels in their handes, to follow him hard at the heeles into the water, to the intent that when the horse beginneth to lie down, they may be readie to leape vppon him, and with the helpe of the rider to force him to ducke his head downe vnder the water, so as the water maie enter into his eares: not suffering him to lift vp his head againe of a good while together, but make him by maine force to keepe it still vnder continuallie beating him all the while with their cudgels, and rating him with lowde and terrible voices: that done, let him onelie lift vp his head to take breath and aire. During which time, cease not also to beate him still vppon the head betwixt the eares, which done, ducke his head with like violence once againe into the water, and then let him rise vp vppon his feete: and whilest he is passing through the water, let the men follow after, beating him, and rating him all the waie, vntill he bee cleane out of the water, and then leaue, for otherwise it were disorder. Then the nert daie following let him be ridden againe in the same water: and so soone as his rider seeth that the Horse maketh anie offer to lie downe: yea, and sometime before he perceiueth, let him immediatlie preuent him of his purpose, by touching him with his spurres, and by beating him vppon the head betwixt the eares, and vpon the flanke with his stick, threatning him with a terrible voice, and you shall see, it will make him to forget his lieng downe, and to passe through quietlie:

yea: and it is possible that this correction alone, without the helpe of the other before declared, will suffice to bring him from this vice. And to both these corrections, you may also, if you will, adde the help of the cord tied with a riding knot, about the horses cods, which cord the rider maie straine and let go, according as he shall see occasion, as well to preuent the horse of his lieng down, as also when his head is kept vnder the water, the griefe whereof, together with the other corrections, will the soner cause him to leaue this vice.

How to correct that horse which is skittish or fearefull, and will start at euery thing, and whereof such vice proceedeth. Chap. xvii.

A Horse maie be fearefull, for that he is yong, and hath not beene ridden perhaps where sundrie sights are: and therfore if you chance to ride him through some town or faire he is afraid of euerie thing that he seeth. Likewise if he hath beene skared before time with ante thing that hath offended him, either with noise, sight, or otherwise, so often as he shal heare or see the same, he will be afraid. And finallie, fearefulnesse maie proceede for lacke of perfect sight, which is worse then all the rest: according to all which causes, remedies do follow heere orderlie. But first, as touching the young Horse, which is afrayd of such thinges as hee neuer sawe before: see that in no wise yee doe beate him for the same, least he take the thing that hee beholdeth and shunneth, to be the cause of his smart, and so become more fearefull then he was before; but rather staie there a while, and by gentle meanes make him by little and little, to go towardes the thing whereof he is afraid, which doing make much of him: and you shall see that by standing sometime still to looke vpon it, and sometime by going towards it, he shall be so well acquainted therewith, as hee will not feare it: and when hee commeth at it, let him staie there a prettie while together, to the intent hee may bee the more assured thereof. But if your Horse bee afraide of ante thing, which hath offended him before time, so as hee will by no meanes passe by it: then see that you your selfe molest him no manner of waies, but appoint some footeman standing behinde you to prouoke him forwarde, with the sounde of his lips,

lips, and by threatning him with his voice, and if néed be, by beating him with a staffe vpon the rumpe, and vpon the hinder legs: and when he beginneth to goe forwarde, make you much of him all the way, for so a yong horse must be handled. But if your horse be throughlie broken in all pointes mæte for him to learne, and knoweth what all maner of corrections and helpes meane: then if he chance to be afraide of any thing, and so suddenlie stoppeth, going by the waie, let not immediatlie to put him forwarde, by helping him with your voice, legs, spurres, or rod, or all togither, without any staieng, to acquaint him with the thing whereof hee is afraid: and that shall make him to goe alwaies forward, as he ought to do.

But if your horse be afraide of anie thing for lacke of perfect sight, then beate him not, but rather by making much of him, encourage him by little and little to go forward, helping him sometime with your voice. And if you see that he standeth doubtfull, betwirt going and not going, then suddenlie to put all doubtes and fearefull imaginations out of his mind, helpe him not only with your voice, but also with your spurres, and it will make him to passe forth without anie staie.

Note also, that to embolden a yong horse, so as he maie abide anie thing, it is very good to ride him oft in the night season, and in the day time in some towne amongst Artificers, and speciallie amongst Smithes, Pewterers, Armourers, Brasiers, Tinkers, and such like: and likewise amongst Furriers, where diuers coloured skins hang in sight, and also abroad in the field, where dead carcasses lie new slaine, to the intent that no maner of sight or noise may séeme strange vnto him: and whensoeuer hee will not come nigh anie such thing, then vse the order before declared.

It is good for certaine daies to let him weare such a whurligig as children run withall against the winde, made like a windmill sailes, fastened to his headstall vpon his foretop, or on the one side of his head, vnder his eare. For besides that, the swift turning about thereof before his eies, doeth helpe much to assure him: the whiteneslle also of the same, whilest it turneth about, doeth take away those impressions or shadowes from his sight, which before were wont to fraie him. But though this be a great helpe to em-

bolden the moſt part of Horſes: yet there bee ſome horſes of ſuch a nature, as after they haue worne it, they will be the worſe for it, and become more fearefull than they were before: which ſo ſoone as you perceiue, vſe it no more, but rather vſe the meanes and order before declared.

Note alſo that when you vſe the foreſaid whurligig, you maie make it of what colour you will, as either blacke, red, yellowe, or blewe, according as you ſhall thinke it moſt needfull, for the allu-ring of your horſe.

How to embolden your horſe, and to make him hardy againſt other horſes. Chap. xviii.

VSe to encounter vpon a ſoft pace or trot, with another horſeman, face to face, in one ſelfe path, ſo as your horſes dolle not one another, leaſt your horſe receiuing ſome harme, become more fearefull than before: yea rather, when you are almoſt one vpon another, if the other horſe be not fearefull, nor will giue place of himſelfe, then cauſe his rider to make him to recoile backe, by pulling in his head with the bridle: and that ſhal be a good incouraging to your horſe, & make him the bolder alwaies to go towards any other horſe. Or if you will you may encounter one with another, riding in two ſundrie paths, the one lieng cheeke by cheeke, within a foot of the other, being both of one length, each of them conteining about ten paces, to the intent that in maneging your horſes to and fro vpon a trot, you comming one towardes another from two contrarie endes, may both meet right in the midſt of your courſe, and ſo paſſe one hard by another: which you ſhall be ſure to doe, if both your horſes keepe like time and meaſure, as well in their trotting as in their turning: and loke on what hand ſoeuer the one turneth, the other muſt doe the ſame, and in the ſelfe ſame inſtant: and like order muſt be obſerued afterward, when you manege them alſo vpon a gallop. Thus by paſſing and repaſſing, and oft meeting without iuſtling: your horſes ſhall be ſo well acquainted, as the one will not be afraid of the other. Hauing the companie of an other horſeman, you may alſo embolden your Horſe whileſt you trot the ringes in this order following. Firſte, enter both togither

into

into the right ring: and then turning taile to taile, followe you the right hand, and let him followe the left, in the selfe same ring, enlarging the ring path so, as in your meeting, whilest you goe about, you may touch one another. And when you haue gone twise about the right ring, enter both together into the left ring, e there turning tailes, obserue like order as before: and to shift from ring to ring, treading the same first with a good round trot, and then if you will, with a gallop. And thus by often meeting, both horses shall be well acquainted, and the one assured of the other, whereby with time, your horse shall ware so hardie, as he shall be afraid of no horse. It is verie good also to stand still with your horse hard by the ring, looking on whilest an other horse trotteth and galloppeth the rings: or to stand right at the stopping place, when another horse palleth a cariere: or on the one side, so as the other horse in his running, may passe hard by your horse. And to the intent that your horse for feare, turne not awaie when the other horse commeth anie thing nigh him, it shall bee good to haue the companie of some other Horseman, being mounted vpon such a horse, as is bold, and will not be afraide, standing a little off from you, whose ensample shoulde be a good encouraging vnto your horse. And to go sometime in the company of such a horse through some citie or towne, would be also a good boldning vnto him.

How to make your horse to abide both staffe, sword, great noise, gunshot, or any other thing. Chap. xix.

THe first to acquaint him throughly with the rodde, so as he maie not be afraid thereof, by often coleng him therewith vpon the neck, and by holding the point right forth, sometime betwirt his eares, and sometime on the one or other side of his head, so as it maie be alwaies in his sight. And when hee is throughlie assured of the rodde: then appoint some footman hauing a staffe in his hand, to stand in your way, whereas you should passe: and as you are comming towards him, let the footman by little and little, make signes as though he would late your horse on the head with his staffe: and then encourage your

horse to go forward towardes the footman, who in the same instant must retire backward, as though he would flie awaie: & by vsing him so a while, you shall see that he will not be afraid of the staffe at all. And after that he can abide the staffe, make him by the like meanes to abide the sword: but let the footman beware that he strike him neither with staffe nor sword, least you vtterly discourage him for euer. After this you may cause three or foure, or a great number of footemen to stande in his waie, making a great howting and showting before him, threatning him with lowd voices, against whom encourage him to go forwarde, first with a soft pace, secondlie with a trot, and thirdlie with a gallop, at which time, let the footmen retire backe, feining to run awaie. And if such footmen had staues and swordes in their handes, to threaten him withal, it should make him so much the more bolder.

To make him abide gunshot, or anie other like terrible noise, let him go hard by another horse, or rather betwixt two other horses that haue beene accustomed to the like noise before time, and are afraid of nothing. And as you are riding togither, cause three or foure dags, or harquebushes to be discharged, first a prettie waie off, and then nigher hand according as your horse beginneth to abide them: during which time, cease not continually to make much of him, so well with your hand, by clawing him on the neck as also with your voice, and so by little and little, you shall bring him at length to abide any thing.

Of the vices of the mouth, and causes thereof in generall. Chap. xx.

BEing now come to shewe you howe to correct a horse that hath a naughtie mouth, aswell by vsing diuers kindes of bits meete for that purpose, as otherwise: I thinke it first meete to tell you the causes whereof such euilnesse of mouth procedeth, and how manie vices thereon dependeth: and finallie howe to correct the same. And first you shall vnderstand, that a horse may haue an euill mouth, either because his chin or beard, where the kirble should lie, is too hard, or the places where the bit should rest on both sides of his mouth, called of Grison, Lebarre, be too hard, or his tongue is too hard: or contrariwise, for that all

these

these foresaid places perhaps are too tender, so as he dare not stay his mouth as he should, vpon the bit: againe, his mouth maie be too little, or his iawes maie be too great and too thicke. Of which causes do proceede diuerse vices, as to drawe vp the bit with his tongue, euen as though he would swallow it vp, not suffering it to rest vpon his gums or barres where it should rest: which vice Grison calleth, Beuer la Briglia that is, To drinke the bridle, likewise to beare his tongue alwaies out of his mouth: also to beare too hard vpon the bit, which in Italian is as much to saie, as Tirar di bocca: also to wrie with his mouth, holding the neather part thereof one waie, and the vpper part another way, which in Italian is to saie, Far forfici. that is, To make shears. There is also another vice like vnto this, but not so foule: and that is, to wrie a litle with his iawes aloft, but not so much beneath, which Grison called: Ganheggire, a word deriued of this worde Ganga, signifieng the iaw: also to defend the bit with his nether lip, so as it cannot rest vpon his barres, called in Italian Far Chiomazzuoli. Of some of which vices, there be also other particular causes, which shall be declared hereafter, when wee come to the corrections of the same. But Grison saith, that whilest some haue sought to correct these vices aforesaid, by often changing of rough and sharpe bits, they haue cleane marred their horses mouthes: and therefore hee wisheth you in anie wise to abstaine from all such kindes of bits, and to seeke rather to bring your horse to haue a good mouth, and spectallie whilest he is yong, by riding him with a gentle bit, and by bearing a temperate hand, vsing such helpes, corrections, and cherishinges, as are taught before, whilest you teach him to tread the rings, with trot, or gallop, to stop, to aduance, to turne, to manege, or to passe a cariere: which cariere, the more seldome it bee vsed, and with the lesse furie, the better mouth shall your horse haue: for assure your selfe, it is Art and good order of riding which maketh the good mouth, and not the bit. Notwithstanding the qualitie of the bits is not vtterlie to be reiected: yea rather, when the horse beginneth to ware perfect in his doinges, and is well broken, and somewhat staied of head, it shall be verie necessary to ride him with such a bit, as shall be most meet to serue his mouth, be it hard or soft, to the intent he may beare the lighter, and with

the

the more flay, and also be the more subiect to his rider: for the which cause Grison hath set forth in figures fiftie sundrie bittes together with the names and vses of the same, as hereafter shall bee declared. But forsomuch as certaine vices of the mouth, maie be corrected as well by other meanes, as by the helpe of diuers bits, I will first declare those kindes of corrections, and then afterward treat of the correcting with bittes, and therewith shew you all the kindes, names, partes, and properties of the same.

How to correct that horse which shall either draw by the bitte with his tongue, or defend the same with his neather lippe. Chap. xxi.

TAke a peece of whipcord, about a spanne long, and tie the one end thereof vnto the eie of the bitte, vnder the kirble: that done, turne downe the horses nether lip, to the intent you maie eastlie bring the cord betwixt his saide lippe, and his nether gummes, vnto the other eie of the bit, and there to be tied and fastened, and the more the corde be strained, the harder and stronger shall the bitte be. And if the knots at both ends be handsomlie knit, no man shall perceiue the mystery therof: or if you will, in stead of the cord, you may there put a little cheane. And by this meanes not onlie the vices aboue rehearsed, are throughlie corrected, but also manie times diuers other vices, as the putting out of his tongue, the bearing hard vpon the bit: and also the hardnesse of his barres, so as he shal be able therwith to make no resistance. And such cord or cheane will do asmuch, being put to a plaine cannon or scatch, as if it were put to a harder bit.

How we to correct that horse, which will mowe or wris with his mouth, and the causes whereof such vices do proceede. Chap. xxii.

THough this vice doth chiefly proceed of the naughtinesse of the horses mouth, yet many times the riding him with to high a port bit, which perhaps the horse cannot suffer, maie be cause therof, or the distempered hand of his rider, not knowing how to handle him, & to make him to suffer the bridle, of what mouth soeuer hee be, hard or soft. But to remedie

the

the same vice proceeding of the first cause, buckle the mustrol that is to saie, the leather of the headstall, which lieth vpon the horses nose so straight and hard as maie be: and so often as hee moweth with his mouth, correct him first with one spur, and then with another, but most with the spurre on the contrarie side. And sometime also giue him the chocke with the bridle, vppon the one or other, or else vpon both sides at once of his mouth, bearing alwais a steddie and a temperate hand: yea, and for his more correction, you maie also sometime strike him with your stirrop or foote, vnder or vpon the shoulder on the contrarie side, not failing to correct him sometime one waie, and sometime another, so often as he shall offend: and at length you shall bring him from that fault well inough. But if the port of his bitte be the onely cause of this vice, than you shall not néed to vse these corrections, but only to ride him with a close bit, or not so open, being hard or soft, according as the horses mouth shall require, whereof we shall now immediatlie treat.

Of the kinds of bits togither with their names and parts belonging to the same. Chap xxiii

OF bits, some be close & som be open. The open bits are otherwise called of our bitmakers, port bits, of which ports some are whole, and some are broken. Againe, of the broken ports, some are fashioned like geese necks, and they be round: and some like cats féete, and they be square, of which square ports so manie as are made with Diues, peares, or campanels, Grison calleth them cats féete. But our bitmakers do call all kind of square ports, vpset mouthes without anie difference, also some of the broken ports and vpset mouthes, are locked togither with one plight within another, some with a riuet naile, and some with a square peece aboue: and according as euerie bit, as well of the close as open, is fashioned, so is it named. And therefore some are called cannon bittes, some scatches, some melon bittes, some peare bittes, some campanels, or bell bittes, some bastonets, and some Cattes féete. Of which names, the first foure are alreadie well knowne vnto our bitmakers, through the helpe of old Alexander the Italian Rider, who taught them first, both the shapes, and also the names of the same. And

since

since that time they haue also learned to make the rest of the bits, though they haue not so manie proper names for them, as Grison giueth them: wherfore such names as they haue not, I trust it shal not grieue them to learne nowe of Grison, & specialtie I hauing heere englished them so aptly as I can, vsing therein for the most part their owne termes. For I haue not bene negligent in learning at their hands, how to cal euery part of the bit by his proper name, as the cheekes and eies thereof, the ieiues, the rols, rings, & buttons, the whole port, broken port, or vpset mouth, with one plight within another, or with peece, the trench, the slap, the toppe roll, and the watercheane, the neather cheanes, and the kirble, and diuers other termes belonging to their Art, not here needfull to be rehearsed. Note also that of the broken ports & vpset mouthes, some be complete, and some be not. The complete be those, which haue both water cheans, and also trenches aboue: for the others haue but the one or the other onelie: and for that cause I thinke Grison calleth them but halfe bittes, as the halfe cannon, the halfe scatch, the halfe cats foote, &c. But besides all this, he teacheth you of what fashion the cheekes ought to bee made, to serue diuers mouthes, either short or long, right out or compalled: also of what height the vpper eies of the cheekes ought to stand, and how high the broken ports and vpset mouths ought to be, and which kind of closing is best, either with one plight within another, or with a riuet naile, or with peece, and also how the whole port ought to bee made: and finallie how the kirble ought to bee made. But forsomuch as the cheekes and eies therof, and also the kirble, are members common to both kinds of bits, so well to the close as open, I will therefore first treat of them, and then of the rest in their places, bicause the shapes of the close bits shall be first presented vnto you: and next to them the broken ports, vpset mouthes, and cats feete: and last of all the whole portes, as well without trenches, as with trenches aboue.

Of the cheekes and eies of bittes, and also of the kirble, and how they ought to be made, Chap. xxiiii.

VNtill your Horse then be throughlie staied of head, and specialtie if he beare too low, and bring his head in too much, let the

the cheekes of your bridle bee right out, and not compassed: for the righter they be with the nether endes comming to the manward, the lesse the bridle shall force the horses head: yea rather, it shall make him to carrie his head the higher, and his mosell the more outward. But the more compassed the cheekes be, with the nether end shooting out forward, the more they bring in his head: and therefore when the horse is once throughlie staid, it shall bee most méete to vse the compassed cheekes, which besides making the horse to reane kindlie, doe also giue the better grace vnto the bit in his mouth, and doe make it the more comelie and sightlie. Againe, such cheeks must be long or short, according to the greatnesse of stature and strength of the horse, and also partlie according as hee beareth his head: for if hee be great of stature, and weake of backe, or carieth his head lowe and not steddie, then the cheekes would be somwhat longer then they be commonly vsed, and that shall make him to beare high, albeit such length must berie seldome be aboue a spanne: for vnlesse necessitie so requireth, it is better that the cheekes be short than long, so that comelinesse touching the stature of the horse be obserued.

And note here by the waie, that according to Grison, the cheeks called of him Laguardia, is onelie that part which extendeth from the nethermost eie, sustaining the sciue downwardes: for all the rest vpward, hee calleth Stanghetta, for the which our bitmakers haue no proper name: and therefore from henceforth I will call it the head of the cheeke, which head containeth the great eie, whereunto the sciue is fastened, and a little hole aboue that, for the water cheane, and also the vpper eie, whereunto the portsmouth is put, which head togither with the vpper eie, if it mount high, it maketh the horse to beare high, both with necke and head: but if the head be short, so that the eie standeth low, then it causeth a contrary effect. But vnlesse some necessitie did otherwise force, I would wish it alwaies to be in a meane, neither too high nor too low, but answerable to the rest of the bit.

Of the kirble.

NOw as touching the kirble, it would be good and strong, and made with round links, fashioned in this sort like an S. Neither

ther doe I allowe for the moſt part anie other faſhion to bee vſed than this, howe harde or tender ſoeuer the horſe be of chinne or beard: for the more that a hard chinne is broken with rough kirbles, as thoſe be which are made with ſquare linkes, and ſharpe pointed, like dimants: the harder his chinne will be, through the cornie fleſhe which will growe thereon, when it is whole, and ſo make the horſe to care leſſe for the bridle then he did before. And againe, on the other ſide, though the horſe bee neuer ſo tender of chinne: yea, and alſo very tender of his barres or gummes, which kinde of horſe is verie hard to find, yet I would haue neither his bitte nor his kirble to bee couered with cloth, as ſome men vſe to doe. For though bee be ſo tender indeede, yet it is not that which will giue him boldneſſe to ſtaie his mouth vpon the bitte as hee ſhould do: yea, rather I would wiſh you for a certaine time to ride him without anie kirble at all. And when ye ſée that he beginneth to ſtaie ſomewhat vppon the bridle, then make him a kirble of double fillet lace, otherwiſe called inkle, of an inch broade, tieng it no ſtraighter, but ſo as it maie keepe the bitte alwaies at one ſtaie in his mouth, which fillet, when he is once perfect, you maie take awaie, and put in ſteed thereof, the kirble before declared: or if you will, you maie make him a kirble flat & ſmooth, like a flaggon cheane, and that perhaps ſhall offend him leſſe.

Of cloſe bits, for what mouths they are moſt meet, and alſo what vices they doe correct, which vices you ſhall eaſily finde by the titles following, and the faſhions of the bits, by the numbers ſet in the margent anſwering the numbers of the figures orderly, ſet altogether in the latter end of this booke. Chap. xxv.

FIrſt then you ſhall vnderſtand, that cloſe bits are onelie meete for horſes of a good nature, at the leaſt of not too froward a nature, whoſe mouthes ſuch bits maie eaſilie frame: yea, and ſome of them are more meete to be vſed in the firſt breaking of a horſe, than anie other bitte, as I told you before in the firſt booke, willing you to ride your horſe firſt with a Cannon bitte with right cheekes, of what mouth ſoeuer he be: yea, and vntill he be throughlie ſtaide of head, and perfect in all his doinges, I would neuer haue you to change it.

For

For a gentle mouth.

But afterward if your horse have a gentle mouth, then you may ride him with a Cannon, having compassed cheekes. 1

For a mouth something hard.

If his mouth be somewhat hard, then you may ride him with a scatch. 2

For a tender mouth, and not great.

If his mouth be not great, but tender and good, then besides the foresaid bits, you may verie well vse a smooth Melon bit, having onelie a water cheane aboue, and such melons may be made like olives. 3

Against defending with the lippe.

Take a Melon bitte, let the melons be somewhat rounder and greater, hauing on each outside a playing ring, or else two rings next vnto the middle ioint as you maie see in the fourth and fift figure. But it were more to the purpose, to take a peare bitte, or a round campanell, other wise called a round bell bit, or else a flat campanell: I call it flat, bicause the endes thereof are not rising and embossed out, as the other is. And let not the peares of the peare bit, or the belles of the bell bit, bee made with manie edges or squares, for they are nought, but let them be smoth and round. And if either of them haue a plaieng ring on the outside, it shal be so much the better to keepe his lippe awaie: or else two plaieng rings next to the middle ioint, of all which fashions you haue example in the 6.7.8.9.10.11.12. figure. 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12

For the same fault, and for holding out his tongue.

You maie also take for the same vice a scatch with a turning roll or button on each side: and the greater such rolles be, the harder shall the bit be: albeit I would wish them to be of a meah bigneſſe, yea rather, to be small and not verie highe rising. At the ends whereof, on either side next vnto the middle ioint, maie bee put two plaieng rings, yea and if the rolles or buttons bee not ouer abroad, you may put three plaieng ringes on a side: and such kind of bit is verie good for a horse that will put out his tong. 13 14

Other bits for the former fault of the lip, but not to be vsed very often.

Though some for the same faulte vse to take a double peare bit, or a double campanel, that is to saie hauing two peares, or two belles on a side, or else a bastonet, which mate be otherwise called a trewe bit with round buttons, or rough rings made high like wheeles: yet I counsell you not to vse them but verie sildome, and specially the bastonet with rough rings.

And note, that though round melon bits, campanels, scratches, and bastonets with buttons, be close bits: yet they be somewhat like vnto the open bits, in that they partly giue libertie vnto the tongue: but beware that you make none of these bits, or anie other with a gag or spone in the middest, as was vsed in old time, and is yet at these daies in some places of the worlde, for that is verie naught. But if you woulde giue your horse some thing to plaie on: then in stead of such gag or spone, you may place in euerie one of these bits a plaieng ring or two, on ech side next vnto the middle ioynt: and though there were none at all, it maketh no great matter.

Of open bits in generall. Chap. xxvi.

Hauing sufficiently spoken of close bits how they ought be made, & whereto they serue: I purpose now to speak of the open bits, otherwise called port bits, which be of more value, bicause they set the tongue at more libertie, which can make no resistance, the bit being out of his reache: yea, these bits be so proper to correct anie vice of the mouth, as by the helpe of them ioyned with Arte, and good order of riding, any horse may be made to haue a good mouth. And first, beginning with the broken ports, and vpset mouthes, I will shewe you how such portes and vpset mouthes ought to be made, and howe they may be locked, ioyned, or fastened together, and which kind of locking is best: and then what vices they doe correct, obseruing for the finding of the vices, and fashions of the bits, the order before declared and kept.

Of

Of broken portes and vplet mouthes, how they ought to be made, and what vices they doo correct. Chap. xxviii.

YOu shall vnderstand then, that so well broken portes as vplet mouthes ought to be made all of one péece together with the ieiues, and so to rise vppe with a round or square, méeting onelie in the top, whereas they must be ioined together with a riuet naile, or with one plight within another: or els with a square péece aboue, according as shal be most méet to serue the Horses mouth. For a riuet or péece doth make the bit harder, than when it is locked with one plight within another. And therefore such portes as are ioined with one plight within another, are méetest for most mouthes, and doo best state both head and necke. And note, that the square ports, otherwise called vplet mouthes, muste not be fullie so wide in the top as they are beneath, neither muste they, or the round ports, be too high, or too low: for as ouer high forceth too sore, so ouer low giueth too little libertie. And therfore I would wish them to be in a meane, according as the horses mouth shall require, but so, as it may giue libertie vnto his tong, and not hurte the rofe of his mouth, for that were a foule fault, and yet little considered in times past.

For a horse that hath tender barres, and doth swallowe vp his tongue.

TAke a halfe Canon with a broken porte, without anie trenches aboue. And if you wil, such a broken port may 1
be ioined with a reuet naile. But it would be better, if 2
it were ioined with one plight within another, hauing 3
onlie the water cheane aboue, according as you may sée in ỹ first 4
fiue figures of broken ports and vplet mouthes, whereof some bee 5
ioined with riuettes, some with one plight within another, & some 6
with péeces.

For a horse that hath not tender barres, and yet swalloweth vp his tongue.

TAke a canon with an vplet mouth complet, hauing tren- 7
ches aboue full of little plaieng rings, beads or buttons, 8
and such Canon maie also be ioined with a péece. Or else 9
take a halfe canon with an vplet mouth, hauing trenches 10

11 aboue, fastened in the place of the water cheane, or if you will, for
12 the same vice you may take halfe a Scatch with a broken port or
13 vpset mouth, wrought like vnto the halfe Canon, as before said.
14 Of all which fashions you haue examples in the 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12,
15 13, 14, and 15. figures.

For a horse that hath somewhat harde barres, and swalloweth vp his tongue.

16 TAke a Scatch with an vpset mouth compleate, and suche
17 vpset mouth may be ioyned with one plight within an o-
ther, or elle with a peece, which peece as it giueth the tung
more liberty, so it maketh the horses mouth more subiect.

For the same vice, and for defending with the lippe.

18 YOu may for the same vice make both this Scatch, and al-
so the close Scatch with a round welt, about the bignes of
a good big packe thread on the inside, so well aboue as be-
neath, which pinching him on the barres in his mouthe,
will not onelie make him the more subiect, but also let him from
defending with the lip. The fashion of which bit is plainly set forth
in the 18 figure.

For a horse that will draw vp the bit with his toong.

TAke a halfe Scatch with an vpsette mouth, hauing a
19 trench aboue in the place of the water cheane, as you
may see in the 19 figure. A halfe canon also made in
like sort doth correct the same vice, whereof you had an
example before in the ninth figure.

For a horse that hath a little mouth, and hard berres.

20 TAke a cats foote or vpset mouth complete, made with
21 smooth Pelons or Oliues. But if his mouth be great
22 and hard, let such bit be made with peares, or else with
belles, otherwise called Campanels. Of al which sorts
you haue examples in the 20, 21, and 22, figures.

For a horse that hath a dry mouth and hard, and reameth
low, and perhaps defendeth with the lips.

23 TAke a halfe Cattes foote, made with smoth Pelons, or with
24 peares, or else with Campanels, if he defendeth with the lip,

the

the fashions of which bits, do followe the reste orderlie. And to the water cheane you maie also put if you will, twoe or foure little flaps or plaiers, to make the bit the more pleasant, that the horse may haue some sauour and delight therein. 25

Of whole portes, how they ought to be made, and what vices they do correct Chap. xxviii.

Though whole ports ought to be round, and made al of one peece and not broken, or ioined togither in the top as the others are, yet they must be broken beneth and ioined on both sides vnto the ieiues, wheron the peares or beis are put. For those that runne whole out with their armes, without any breaking at al, be too rough, and therfore neuer good nor meet to be vsed. And on the top of such port, must hang the flap or plaier. Note also, that of whole ports, some are made without trenches, and some haue trenches aboue. But I will shewe you first the vse of them without trenches.

For a horse that hath very hard barres.

TAke a whole port with Oliues, or with smooth Pelons. And if such Pelons had on ech out side one plaieng ring, it were the better. 1

For a horse that hath a great mouth, and hard barres.

Take a scatch with a whole port. 2

For a horse that is hard of mouth, and defendeth very much with his nether lip.

TAke a whole port with peares, or else with campanels, the shapes whereof are expressed in the thirde & fourth figures. And you may chose whether you will haue such campanels embossed out, or else flat at the ends. More ouer as wel the peares as campanels, may haue on ech out side a plaieng roll, and thereby the bit shal be of more force and efficacy. 3 4

Of whole ports with trenches aboue, how they ought to be made. and for what mouthes they are most met, Chap. xxix.

ALso you maie make euerie one of these foresaid whole ports with trenches aboue, full of litle ringes, beades, or buttons, which trenches would be fastened as well to the porte, as to the

holes, whereas the water cheane is wont to be placed, and not to the great eie of the cheeke, where the teines are fastened. As they vsed in old time, and do still at these daies in some places. And the higher the holes be, whereas such trenches should be fastened, the harder shall the bit be. And so shall be any bit hauing trenches aboue in stead of the water cheane, be it Canon, Scatch, or any other whereof you had examples before in the 9, and 19. figures of the broken ports and vplette mouthes. But forsomuche as these whole ports, hauing trenches aboue, in stead of the water cheane, are verie hard bittes, they are not meete therefore to be vsed, but onlie for such horses as be of a very stubborn and froward nature and be laden with great cheeks or iawes, hauing hard barres, and
5 hard mouth. The shapes of which bittes, you maie see in the 5. 6. 7
6 and 8. last figures. But now to conclude, although euerie one of
7 the bits before rehearsed, from the beginning to the ending, may
8 serue, as you haue heard, to some good purpose (beeing vsed in time) and indeed be so sufficient to correct any vice of the mouth, without doing the horse any harme, as I would wish you to seeke no further, yet do they little preuaile, vnlesse the rider haue a good discretion and bee able to discerne one mouth from another, and to know when and how much to increase or to diminish the qualitie of the bit, and howe to applie the same, which if he can doo, and hath besides that, the true Art of Riding, he shall not neede the helpe of so manie bits, but onelie of these three, that is, the Canon, the Scatch, and the whole Port with smooth Melons, or with Olives, which three bits with Art dooth suffice to frame anie Horses mouth of what sort so euer he be.

¶The shape or figure of the headstraine, to be made of good round cord.

Addition.

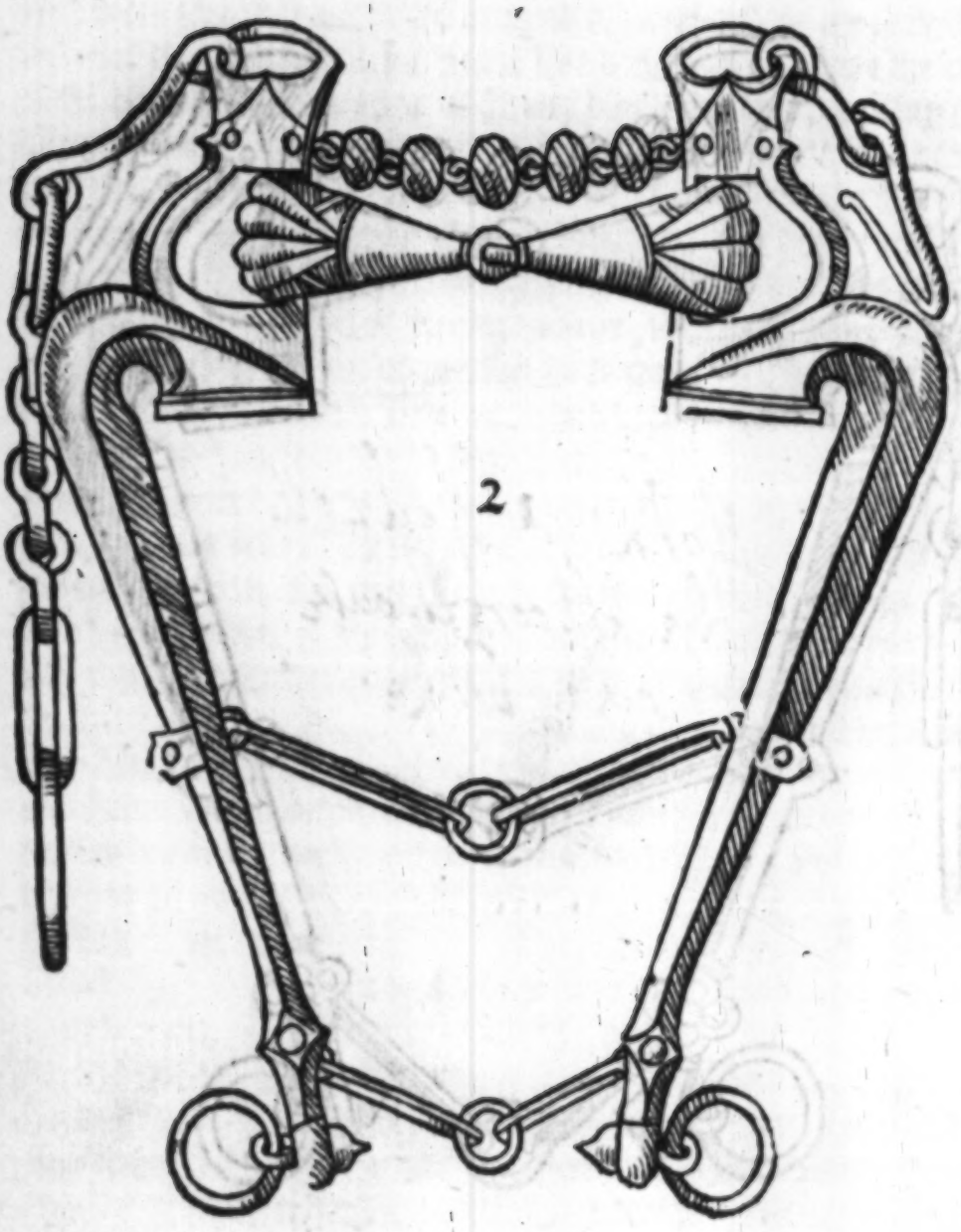
HAuing here set down the true shape of the headstrain, Called of the Italians Cauezzana, I thought good briefely to describe the same, and also to shew the vse thereof, which in déede is no other thing but a plaine halter sauing that the moseroll or noseband thereof hath 2. nooses or loupes, through which passeth a long reane of corde, wherof each end is so fastened to the contrarie chéeke of the said Caueset-

ſan, as by pulling & ſtrayning with both your hands the ſaid reane running thꝛough the lopes of the noſeband being made of harder and greater coꝛde; pincheth the muſell of the hoꝛſe, ſo as it maketh him to bꝛing in his heade, with which kinde of Cauetſan the Neapolitans do vſe to ride their colts. But the colts of our engliſh bꝛéede being moꝛe ſtubboꝛne and ſtronger of head, our Ryders were foꝛced to make the muſroll oꝛ noſeband of the ſaid Cauetſan of ſtrong yꝛon links, made like a cheane of eſſes & the reſt of the headſtall and reanes of ſtrong blacke leather, calling the ſame a cheane, which name in my opinion is moꝛe fit foꝛ a beare oꝛ great dog then foꝛ a hoꝛſe. Proſpero, that moſt cruell rider of a hoꝛſe, made the noſebande of his Cauetſan like a hoꝛſecombe of yꝛon, hauing very deepe and ſharpe teeth, and the reanes of ſuch Cauetſan were made of ſtrong hempe, ſo great as any Carterope, with which kind of Cauetſan he ſo galled the hoꝛſes noſe as it bꝛed many times to a farcine, which becauſe he could quicklie heale, being indeed a better hoꝛſeleach then a rider, he made ſmal account thereof. But to ſhew his other manifolde and moſt cruel coꝛrections vſed to hoꝛſes euen of moſt gentle nature, it would greeue me to wꝛite & you to reade the ſame. Wherfoꝛe leauing to ſpeak any further of his kind of Cauetſan, I will ſhew you ꝑ vſe of ꝑ common Cauetſan oꝛ muſrol, be it of coꝛd oꝛ yꝛon, called of ſome the cheane, which many of our yong riders do not handle as they ſhould: foꝛ when the hoꝛſe is any thing headſtrong, they pull and hale the reat withal their might, in ſomuch as they bend their bodies backward laying their head almoſt vpon ꝑ hoꝛſes rumpe, which is an euill fauoꝛed ſight and to ſmall purpoſe, though the rider had neuer ſo good ſtrength. Whereas the Neapolitane rider ſitteth right vp in his pad oꝛ ſaddle, oꝛ rather bowing ſomewhat foꝛward, laying each hande vpon the midſt of the reane on both ſides of the hoꝛſes necke, holding it there firme and faſt, and when his hoꝛſe hangeth moꝛe on one ſide then on another, and will not ſtay oꝛ goe backe, he giueth him a good ſuer twitch with the one hand on the contrary ſide, whereby he coꝛrecteth the hoꝛſes faulte, far moꝛe eaſely then by pulling and haling at the reanes, as our yong riders do, and therefoꝛe I would wiſh them to follow therin the ſkilfull Neapolitane rider, who in mine opinion is the moſt diſcreet and beſt bꝛeaker of a young hoꝛſe that I haue ſeene of what nation ſoeuer he be.

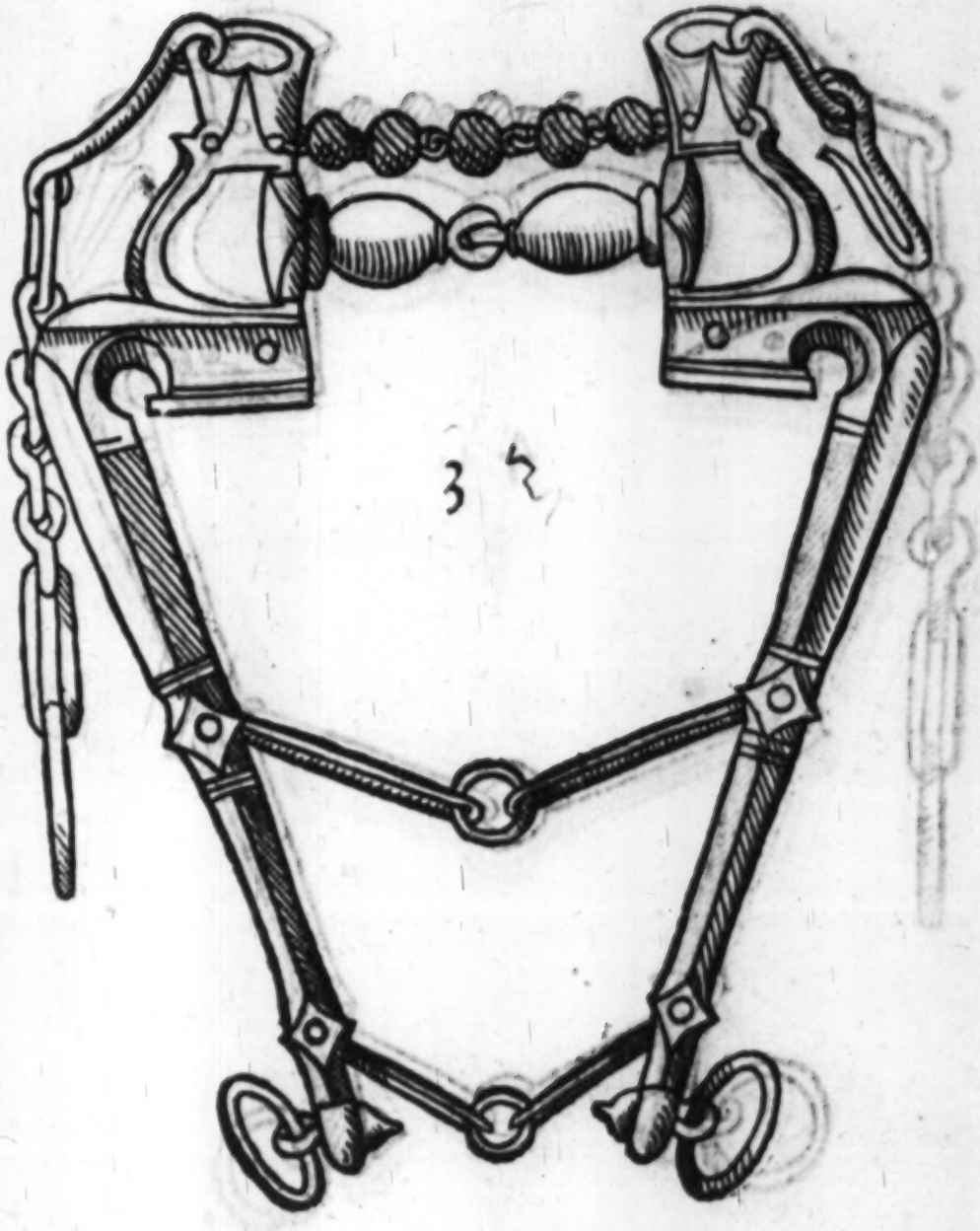
A plaine Canon.

Close bittes.

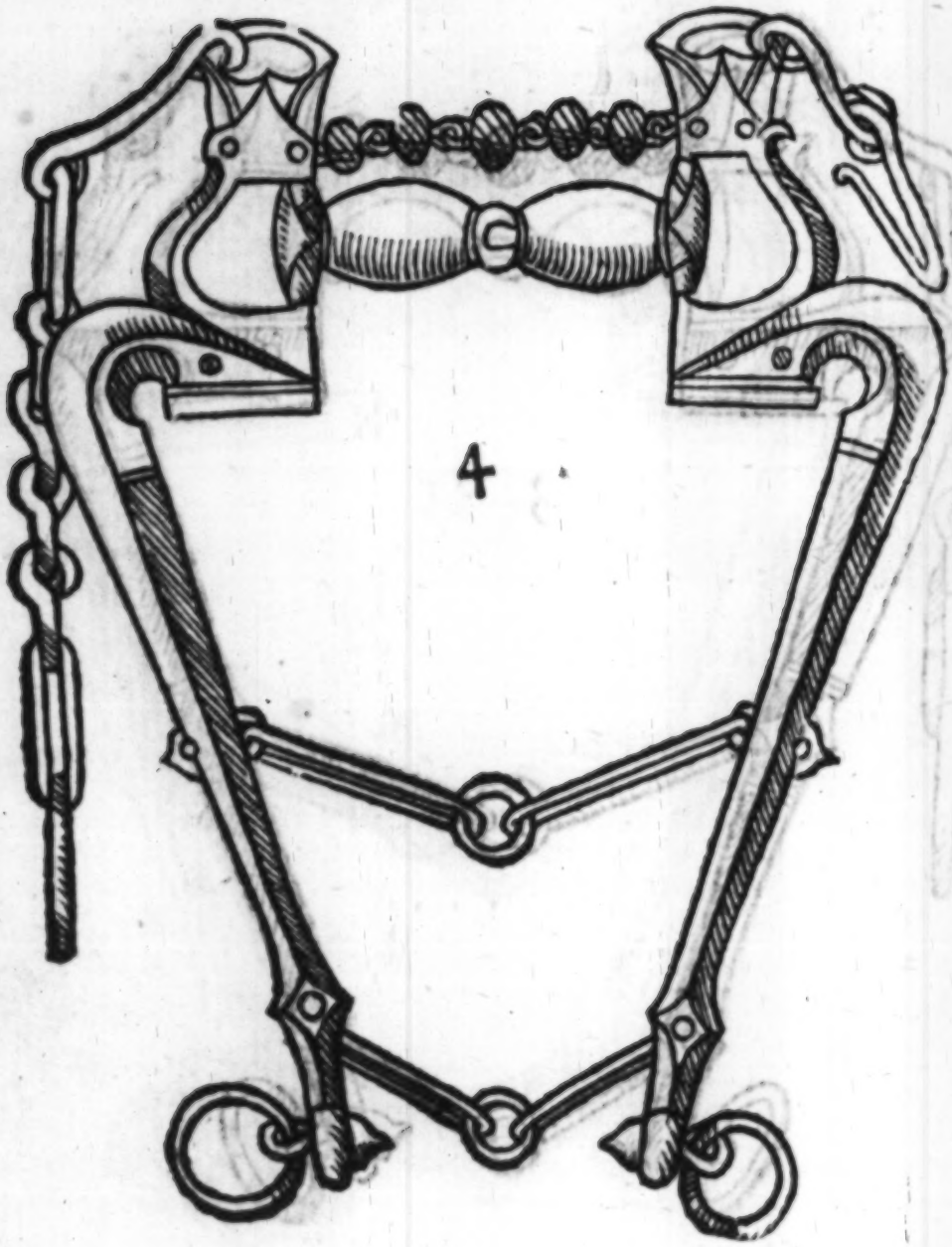
A plaine Scaich.



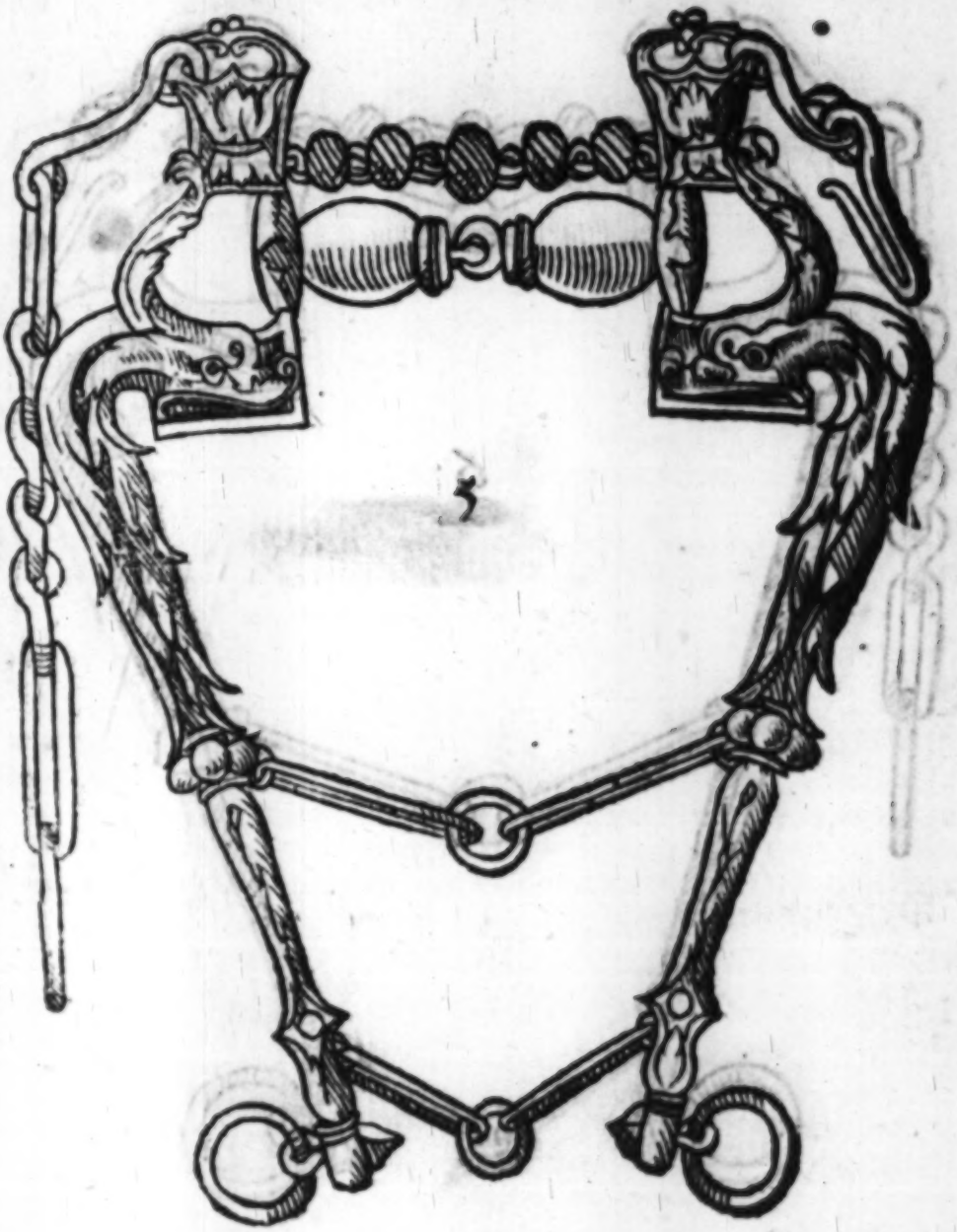
A smooth Meion bit.



A smooth Melon bit, somewhat rounder than the other.

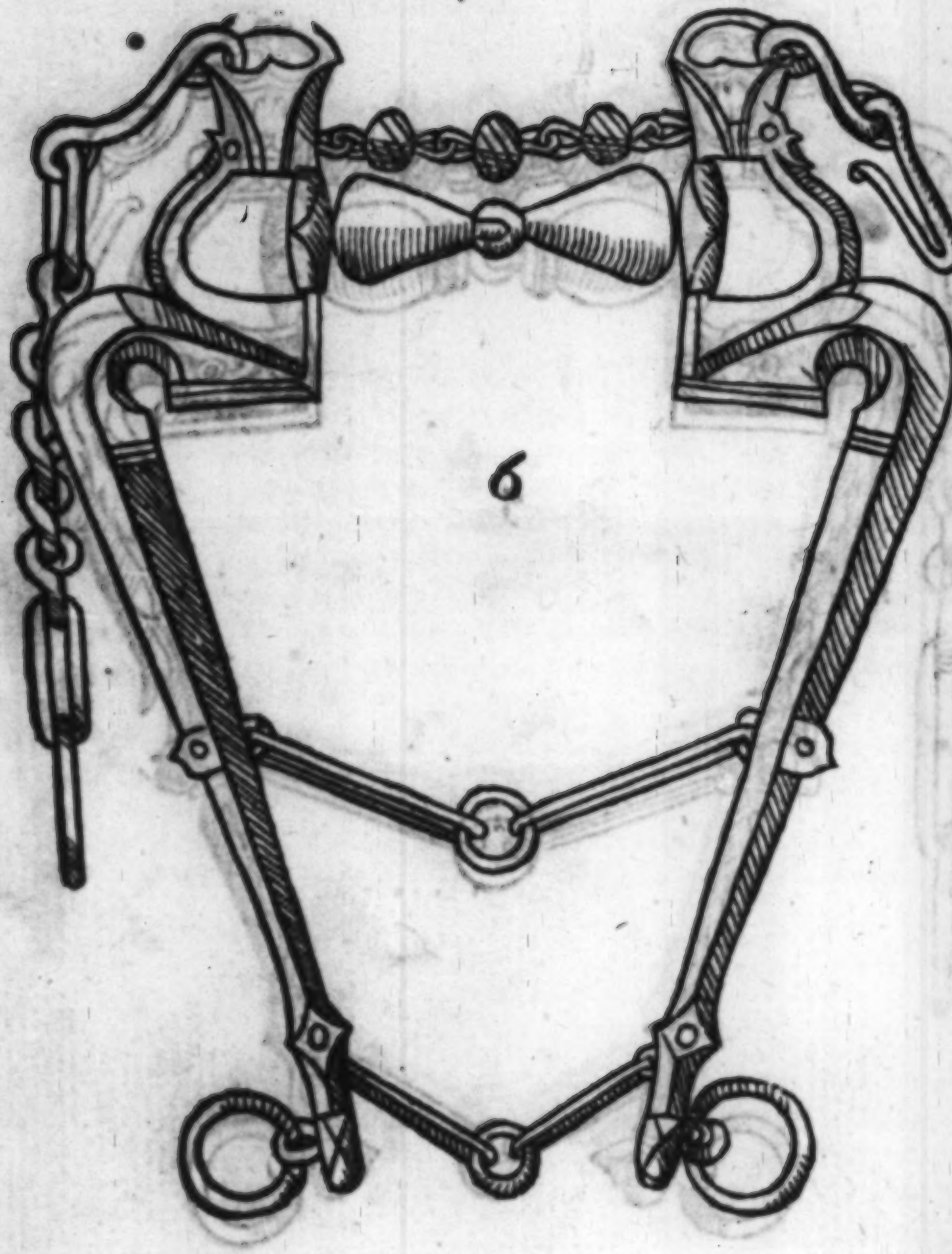


A Melon bit, hauing on each side two playing rings next the middle ioint.

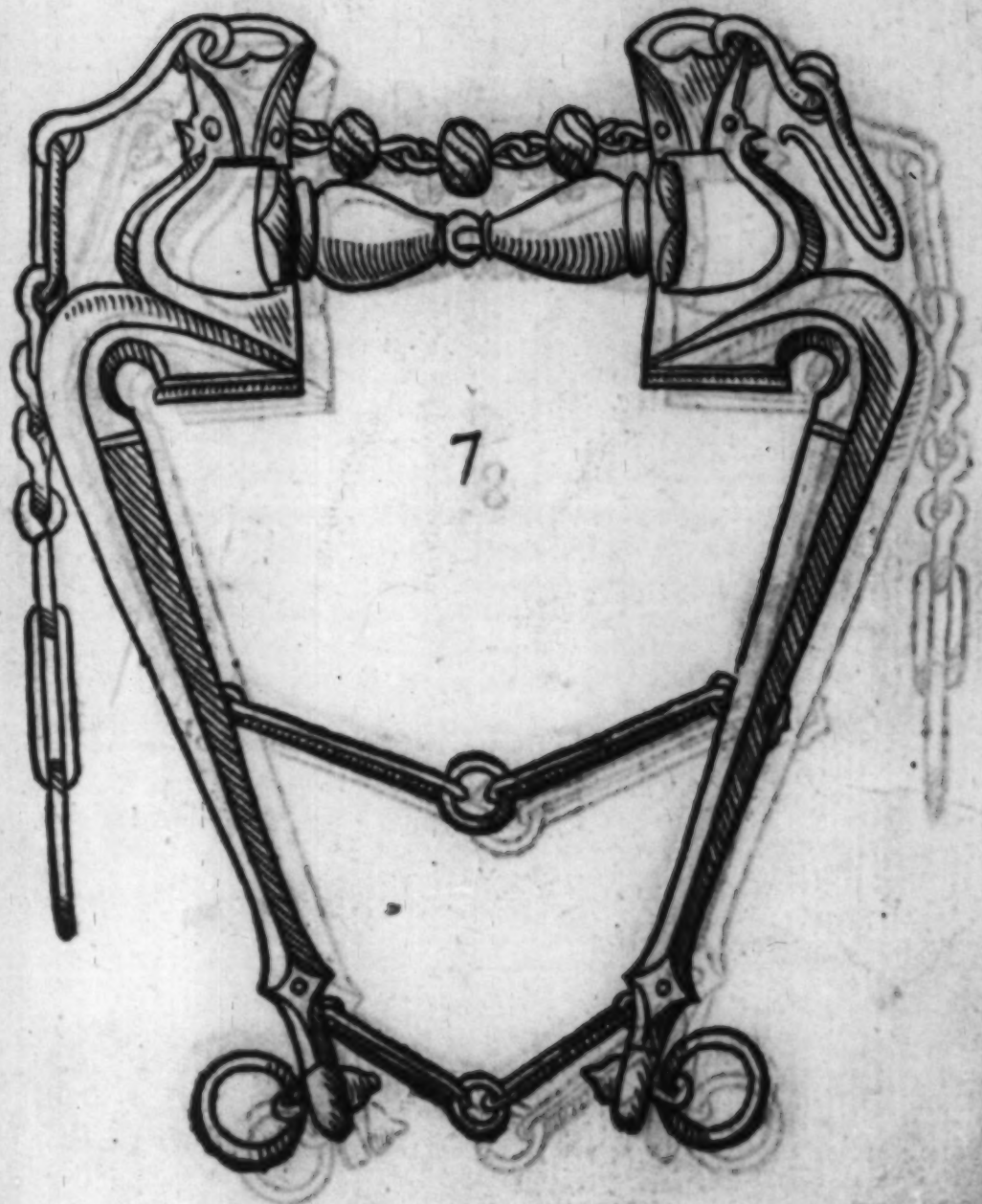


Close Bittes.

A Peare bit.

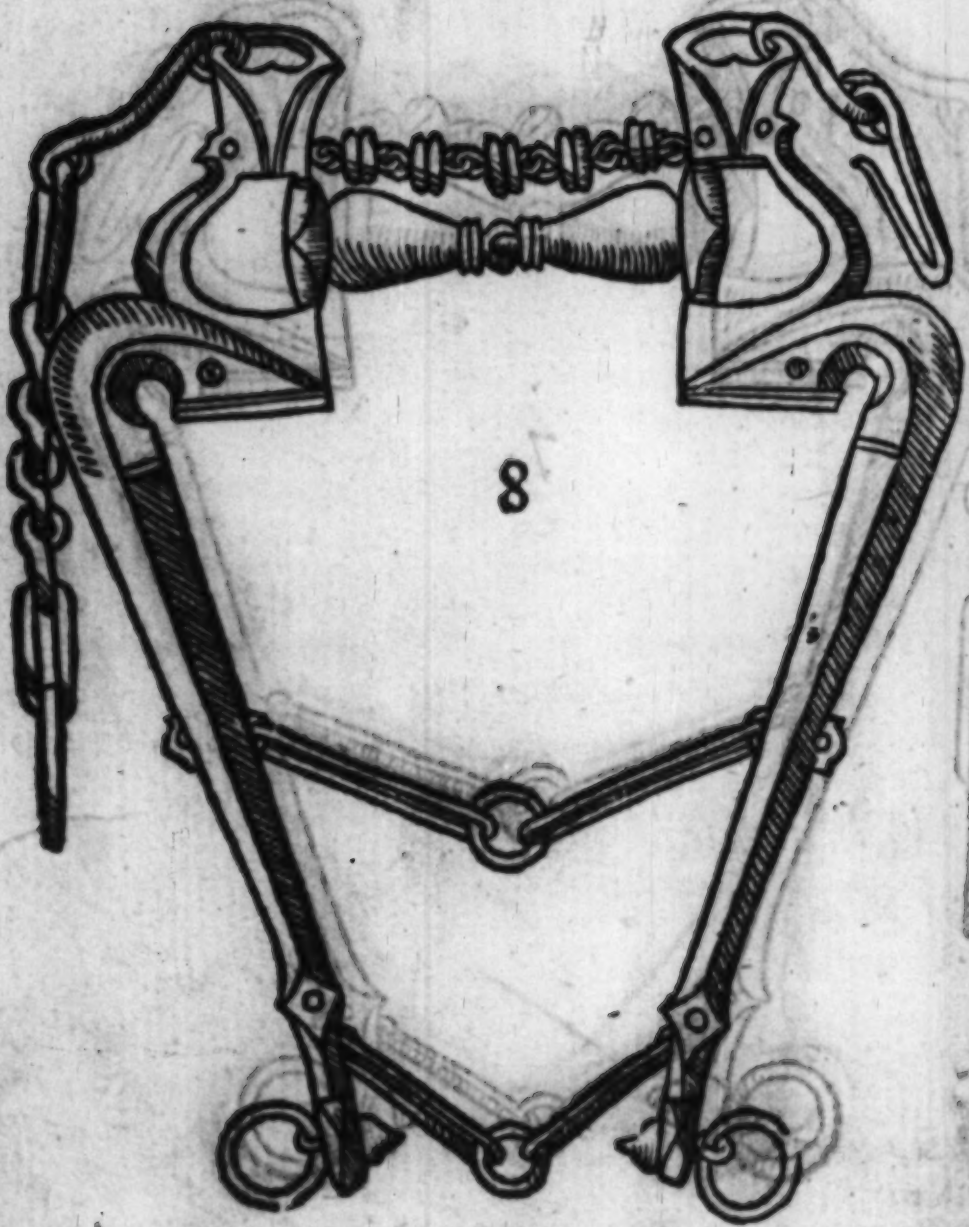


A peare bit, hauing on ech outside one plaieng ring.

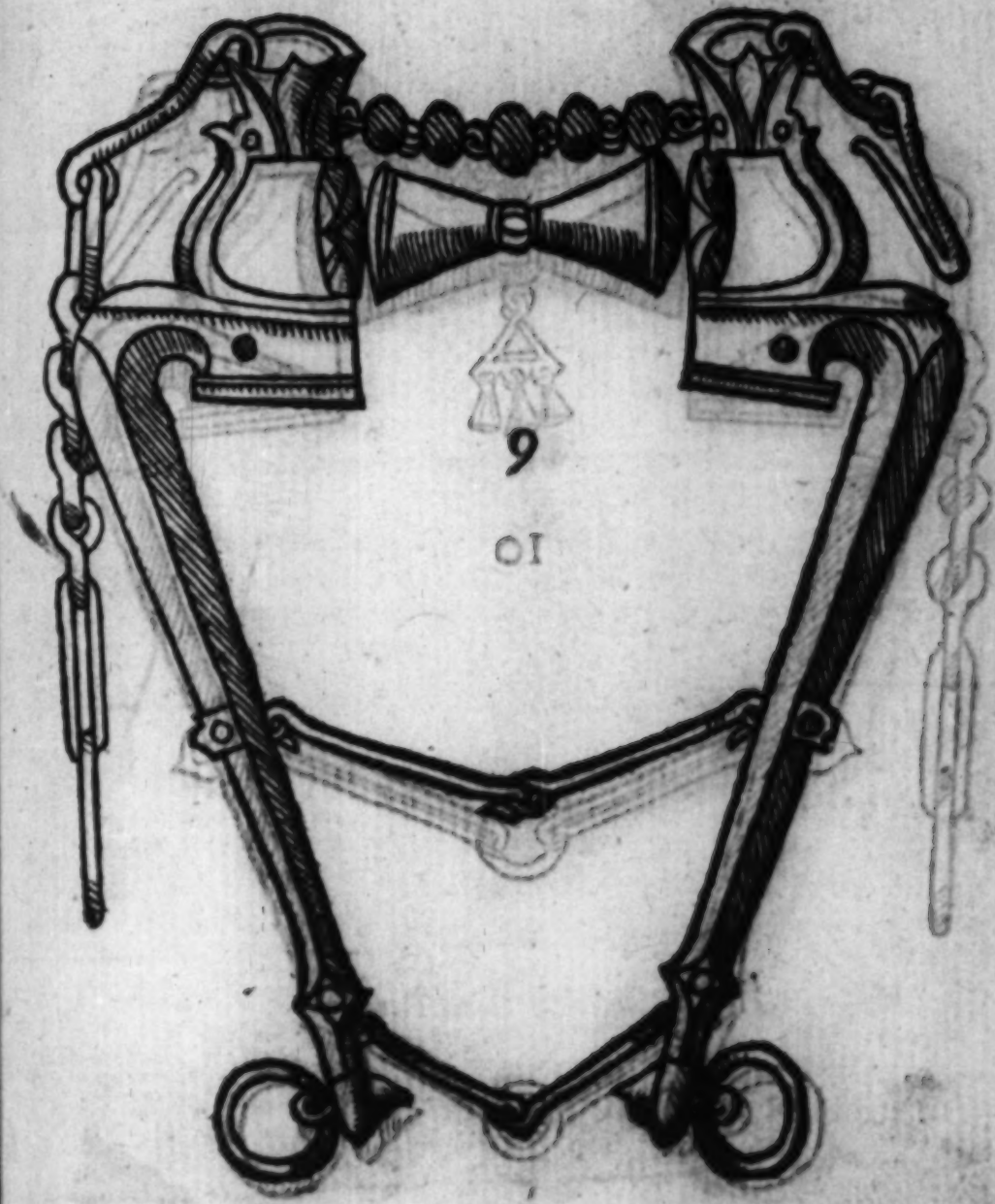


Close Bittes.

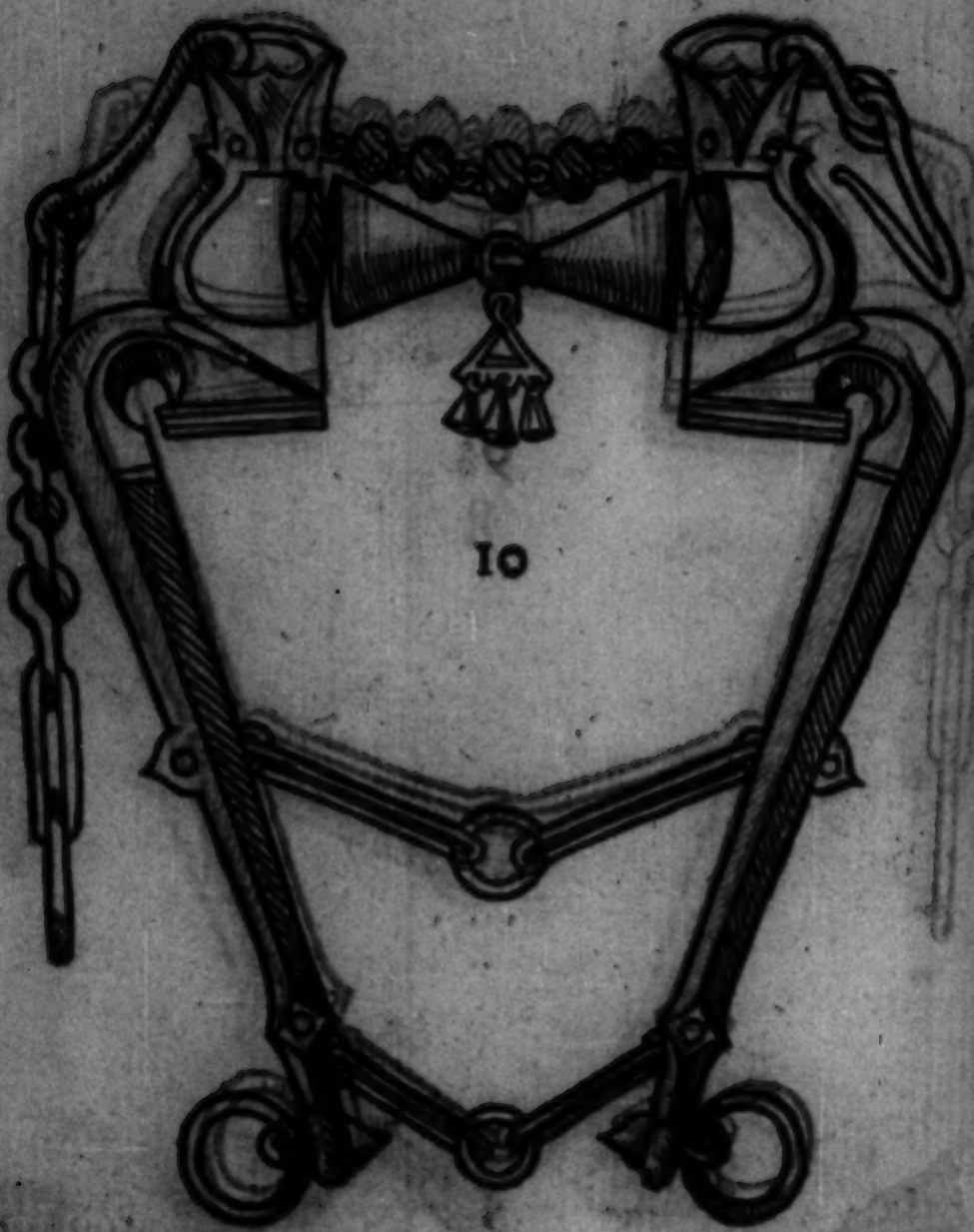
A peare bit, hauing on ech side two plaieng rings next the middle ioint.



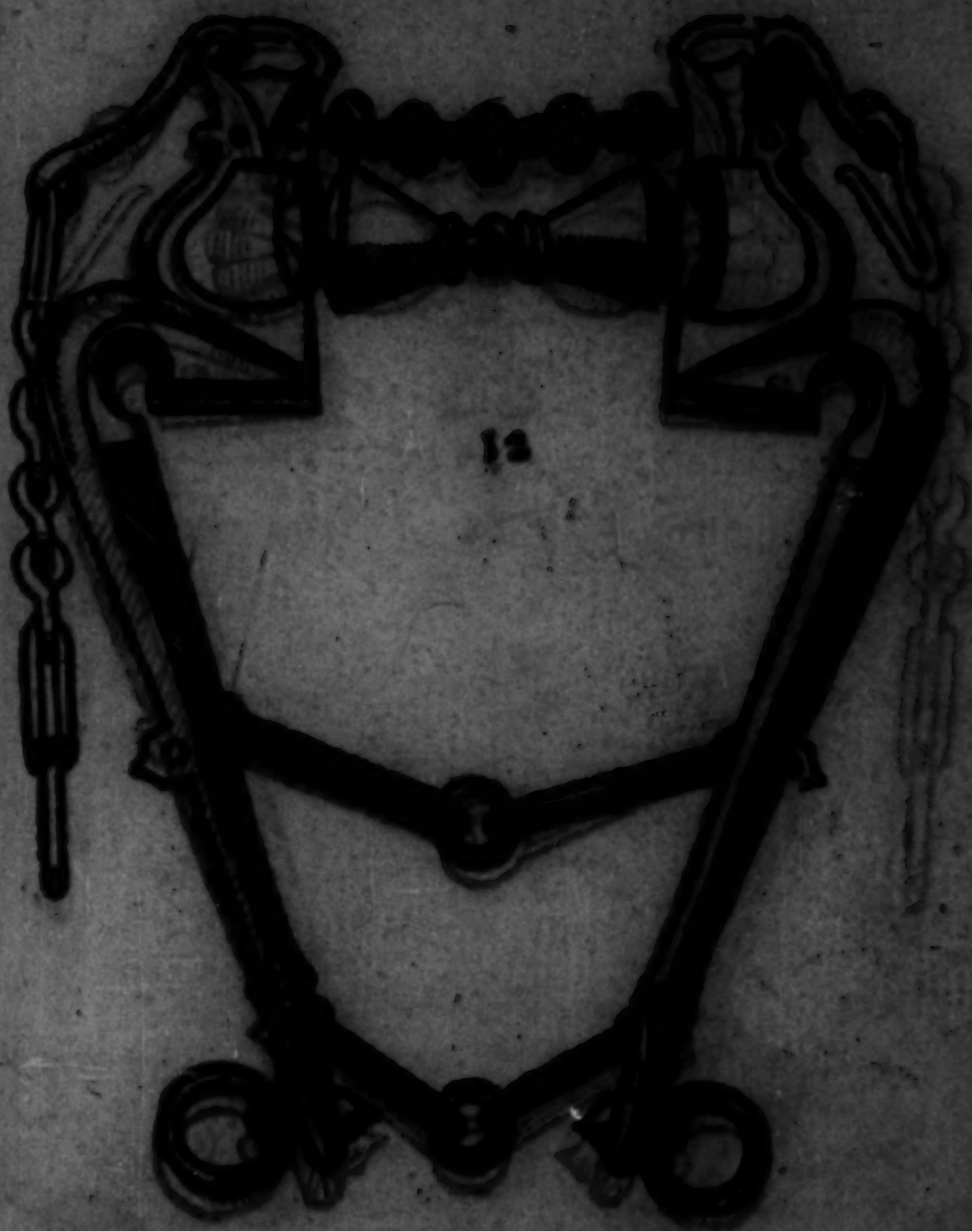
A round Campanell, or Bell bit, the ends whereof are embossed.



A flat Campanell.



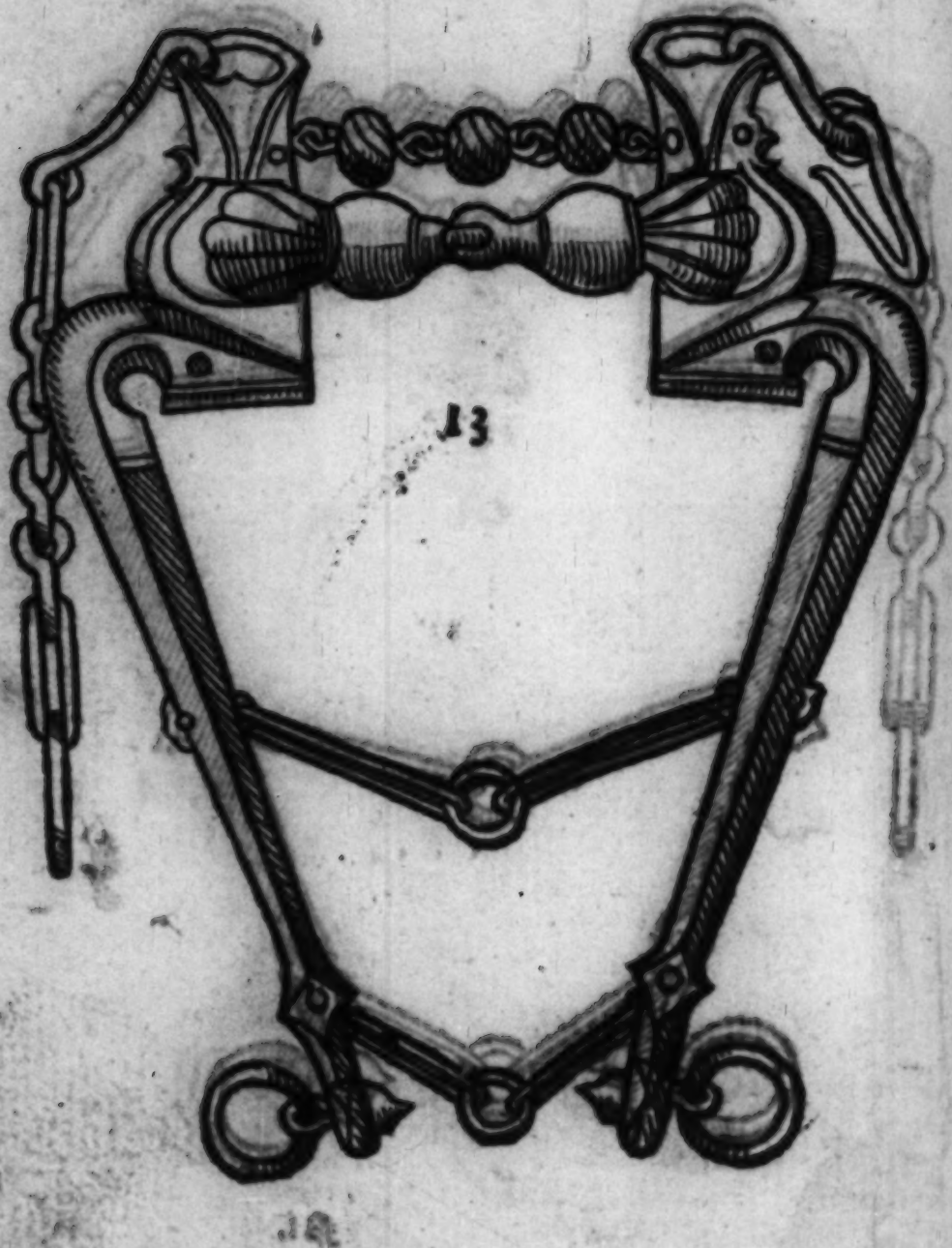
A round compoſed having on eth
ſide t'wo plaing rings next the
middle ring.



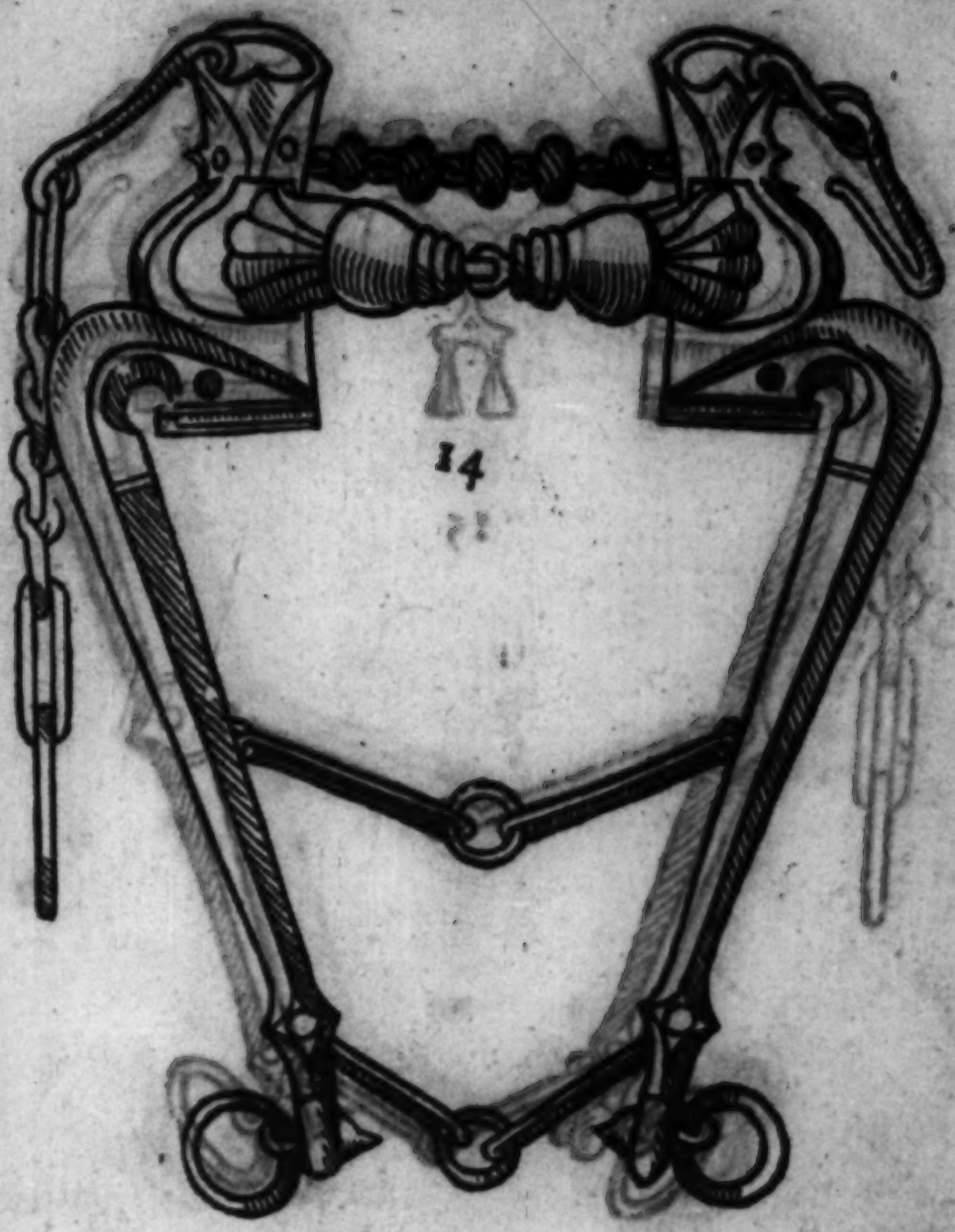
21.

Close Bittes.

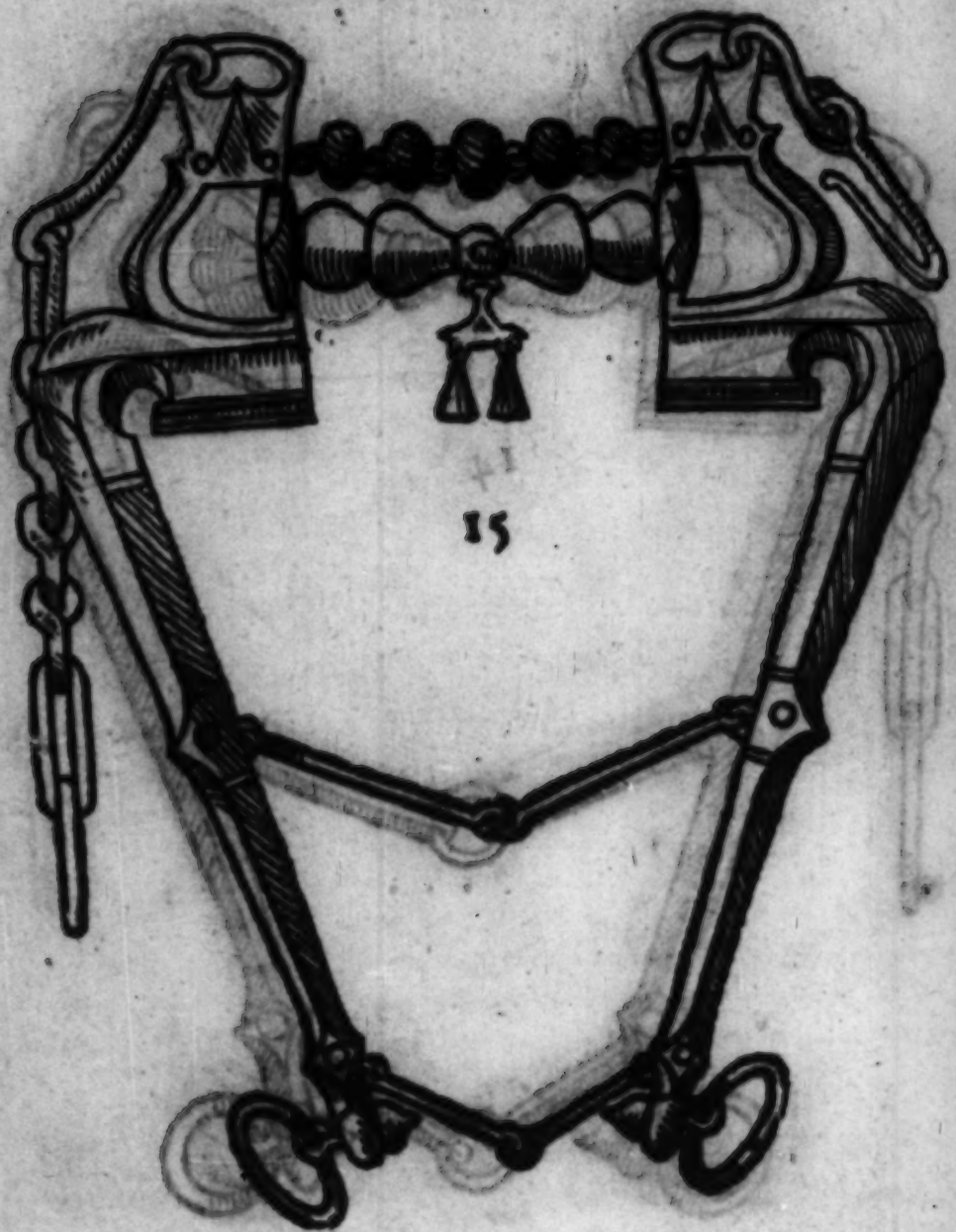
A Scatch with two turning rolles or buttons.



A Scatch with two turning rols, hauing on each side three plaing rings next the middle rings

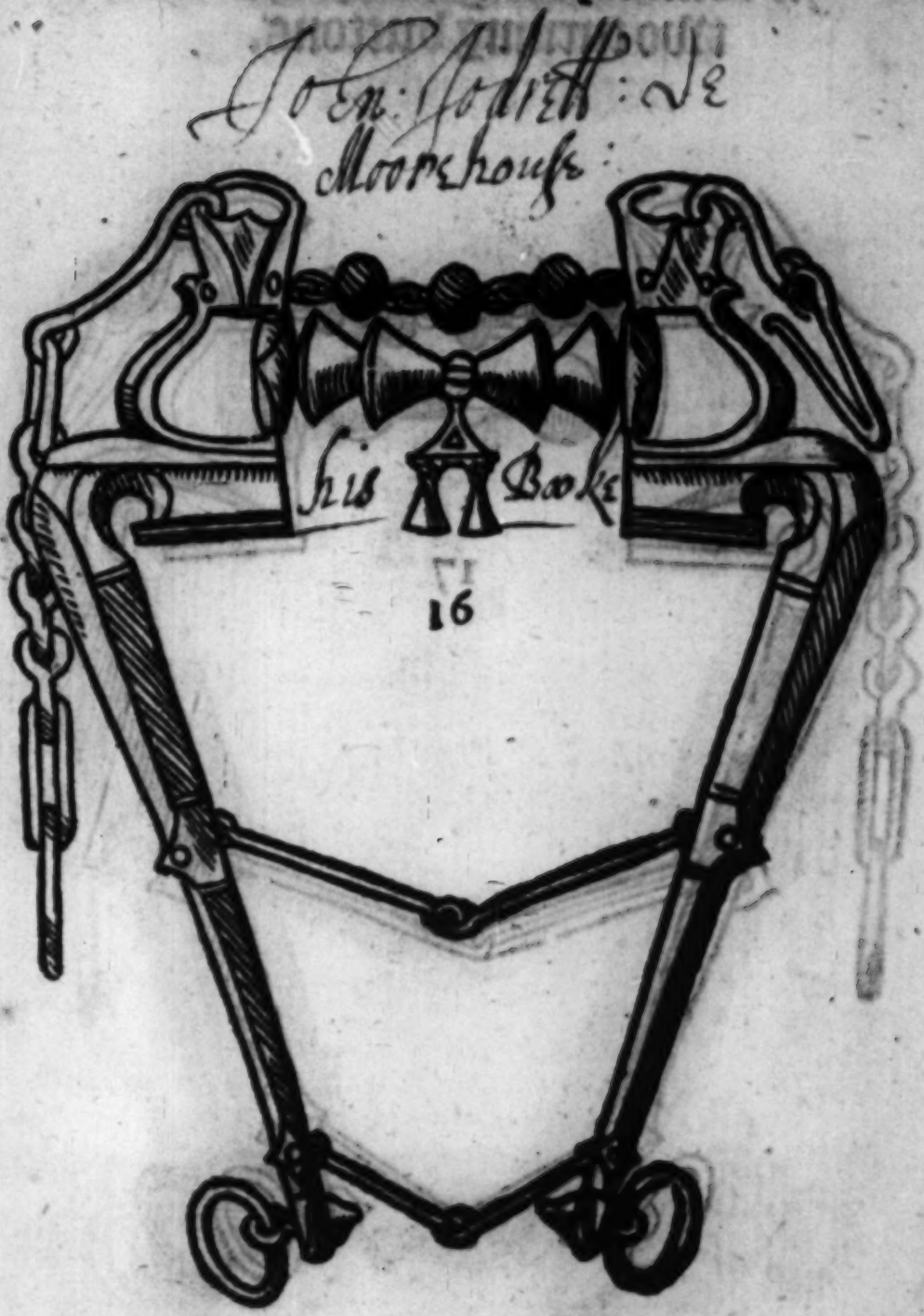


A double Peare bit.

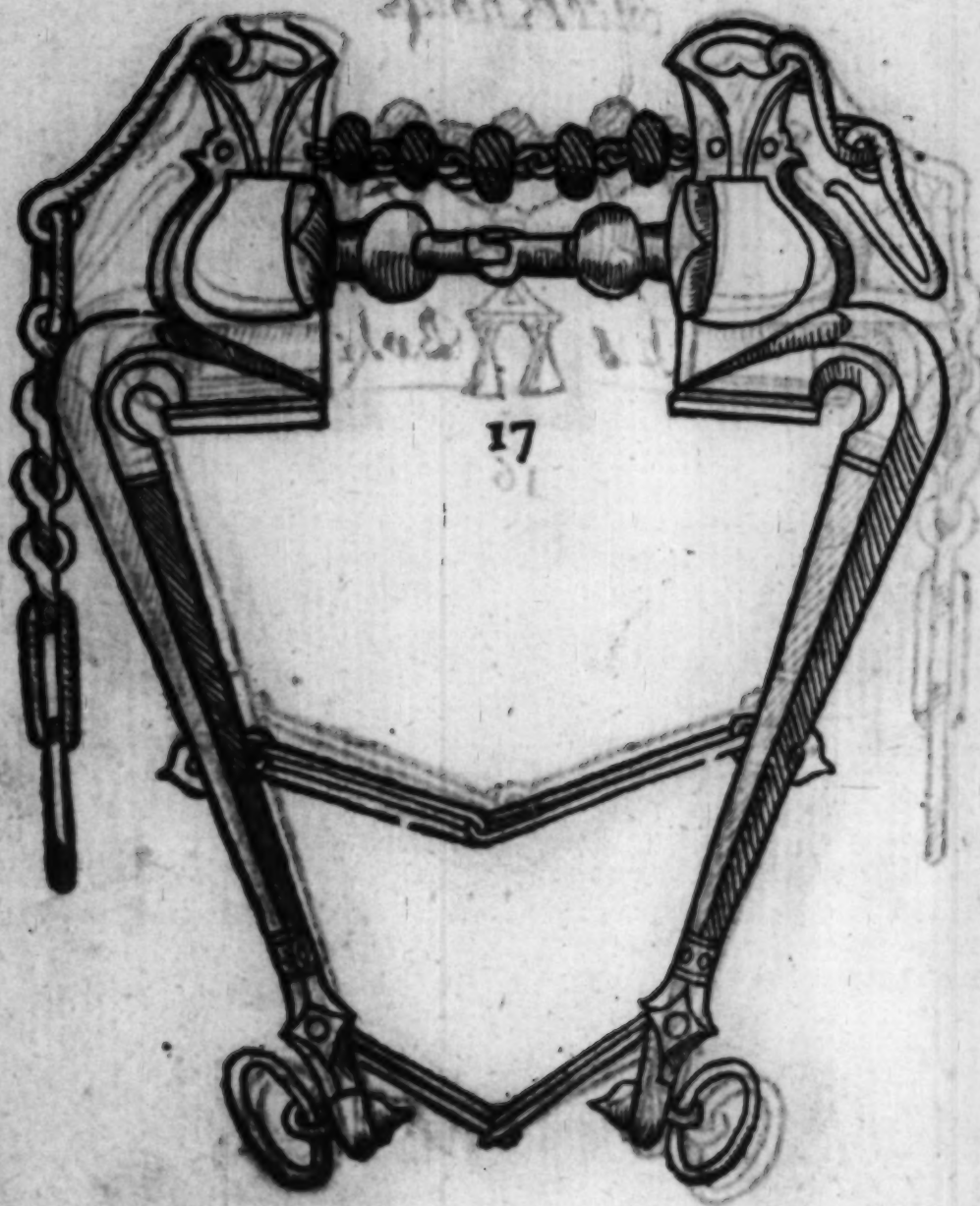


15

A double Campanell.

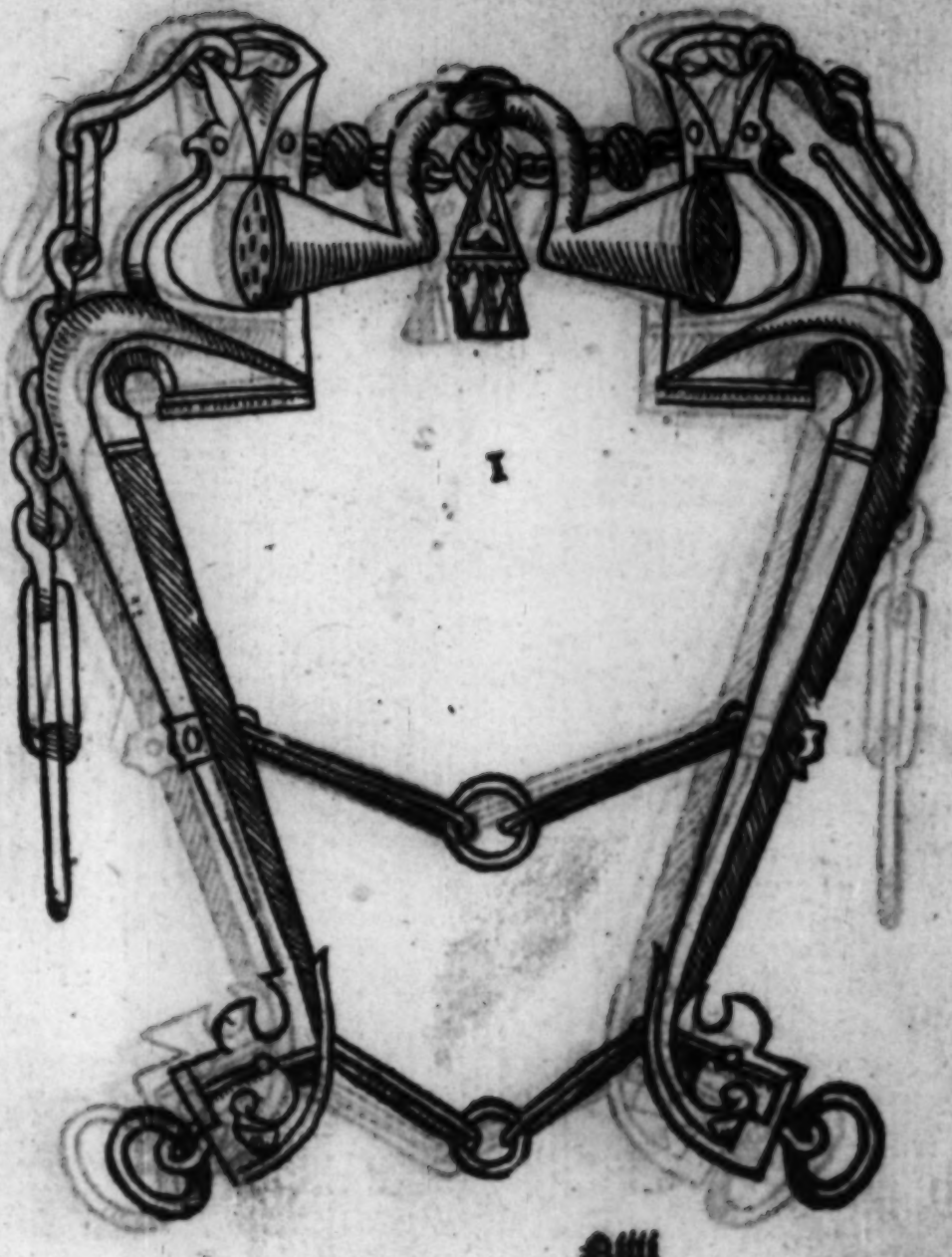


A Bastonet or Jeiue bit, With two turning buttons.



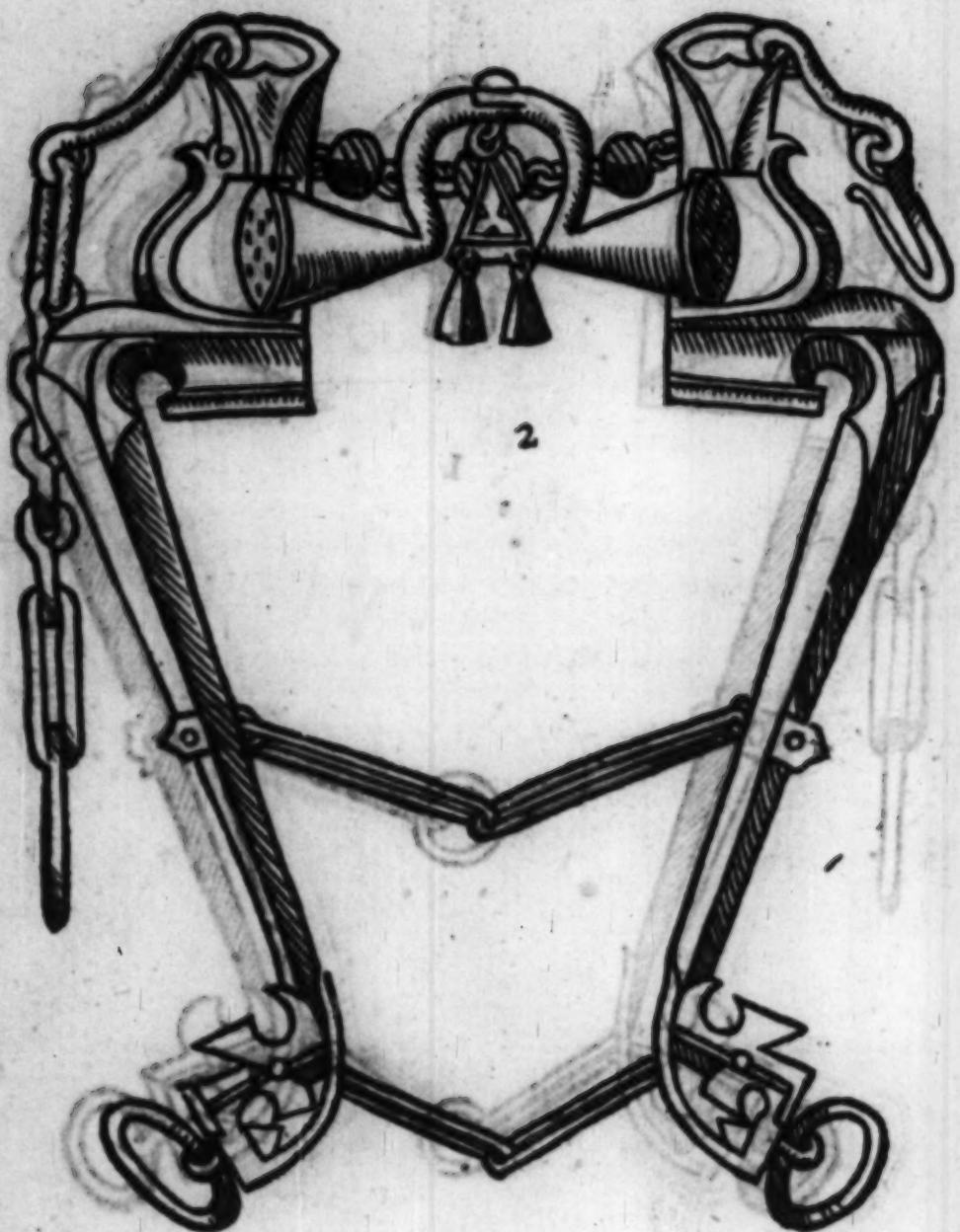
17

A halfe Canon with a broken port, ioined with one plight within an other.

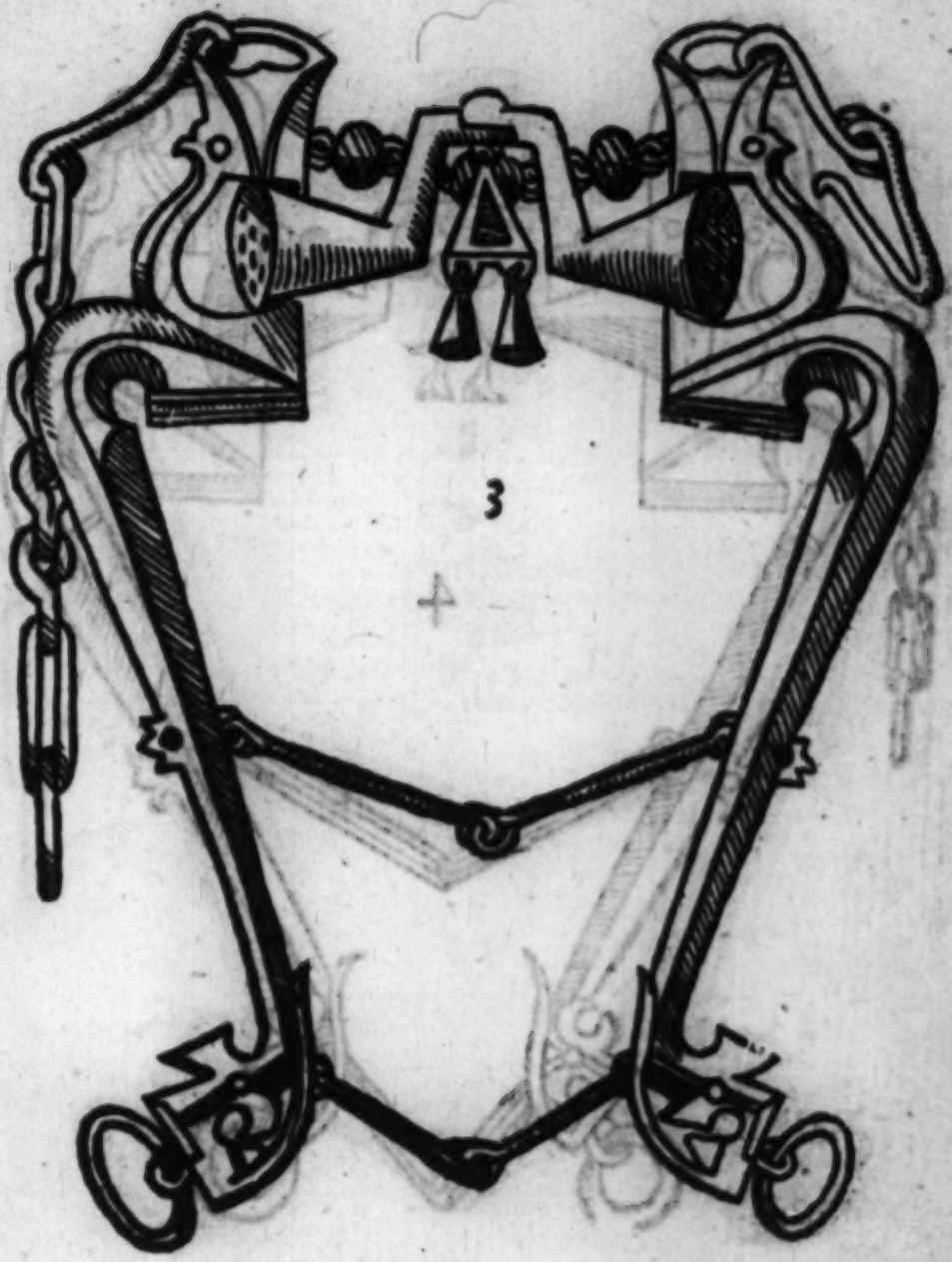


Broken portes and

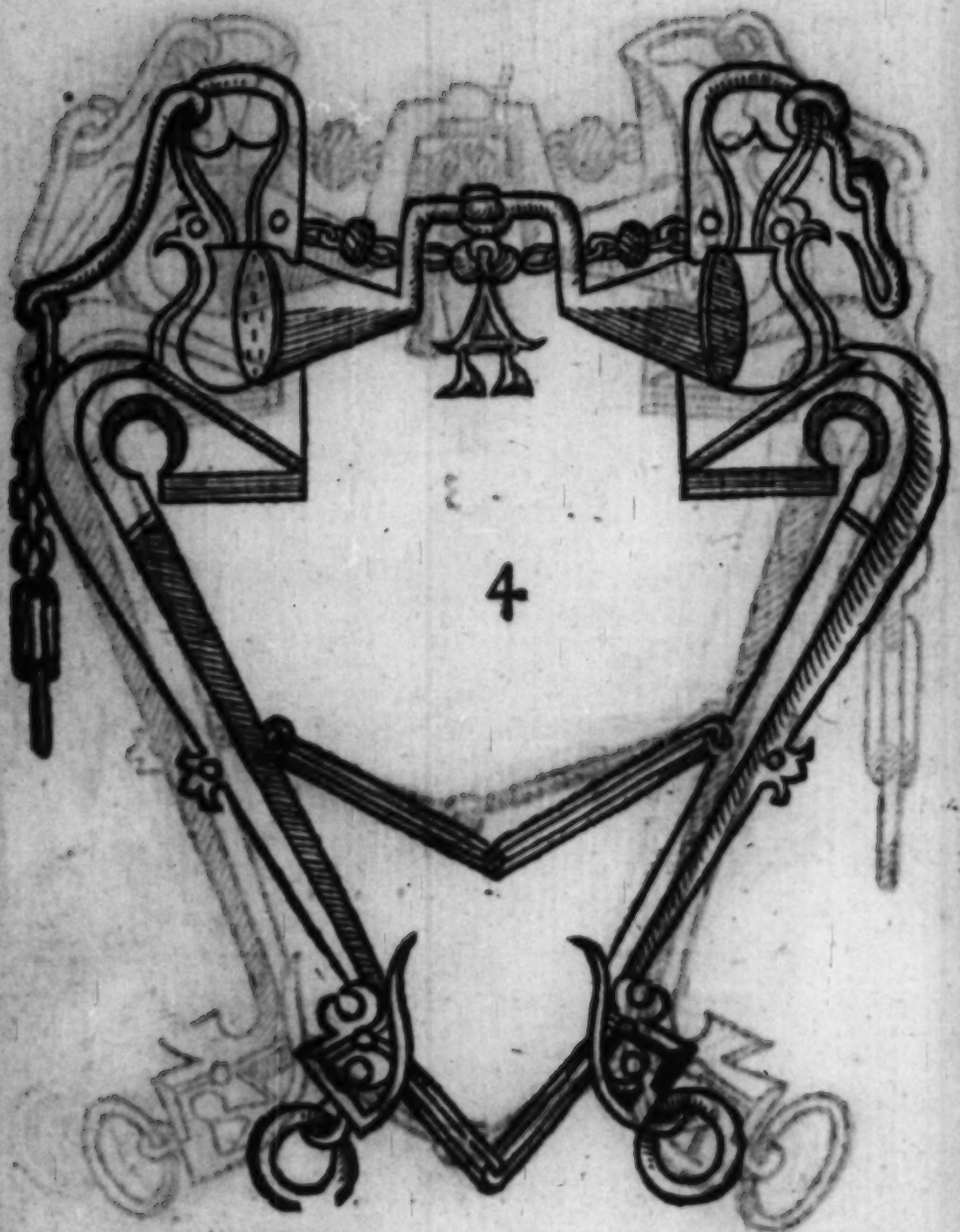
A halfe Canon With a broken port, ioined With a riuet naile.



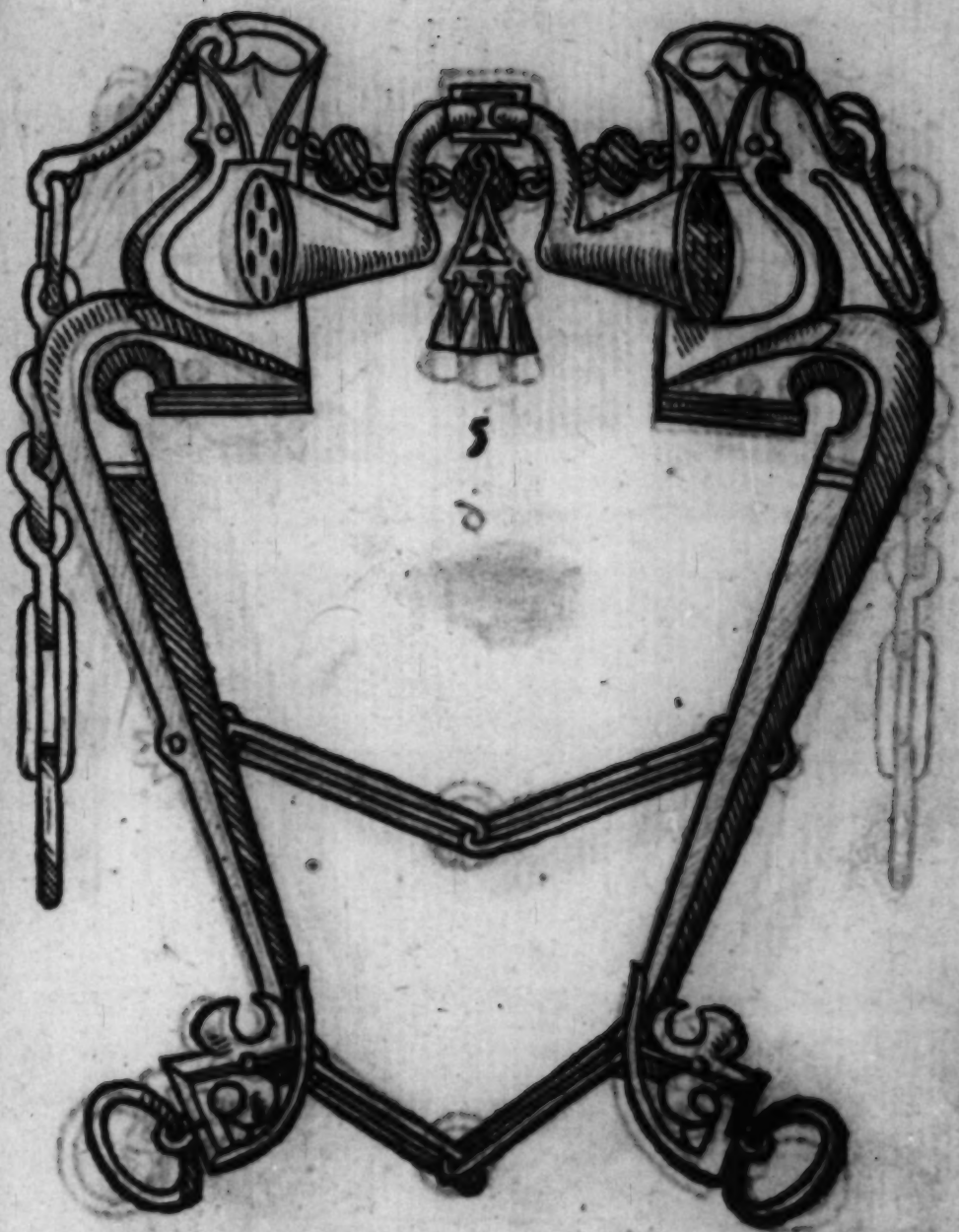
A halfe Canon with an vpset mouth, ioined with a reuet naile.



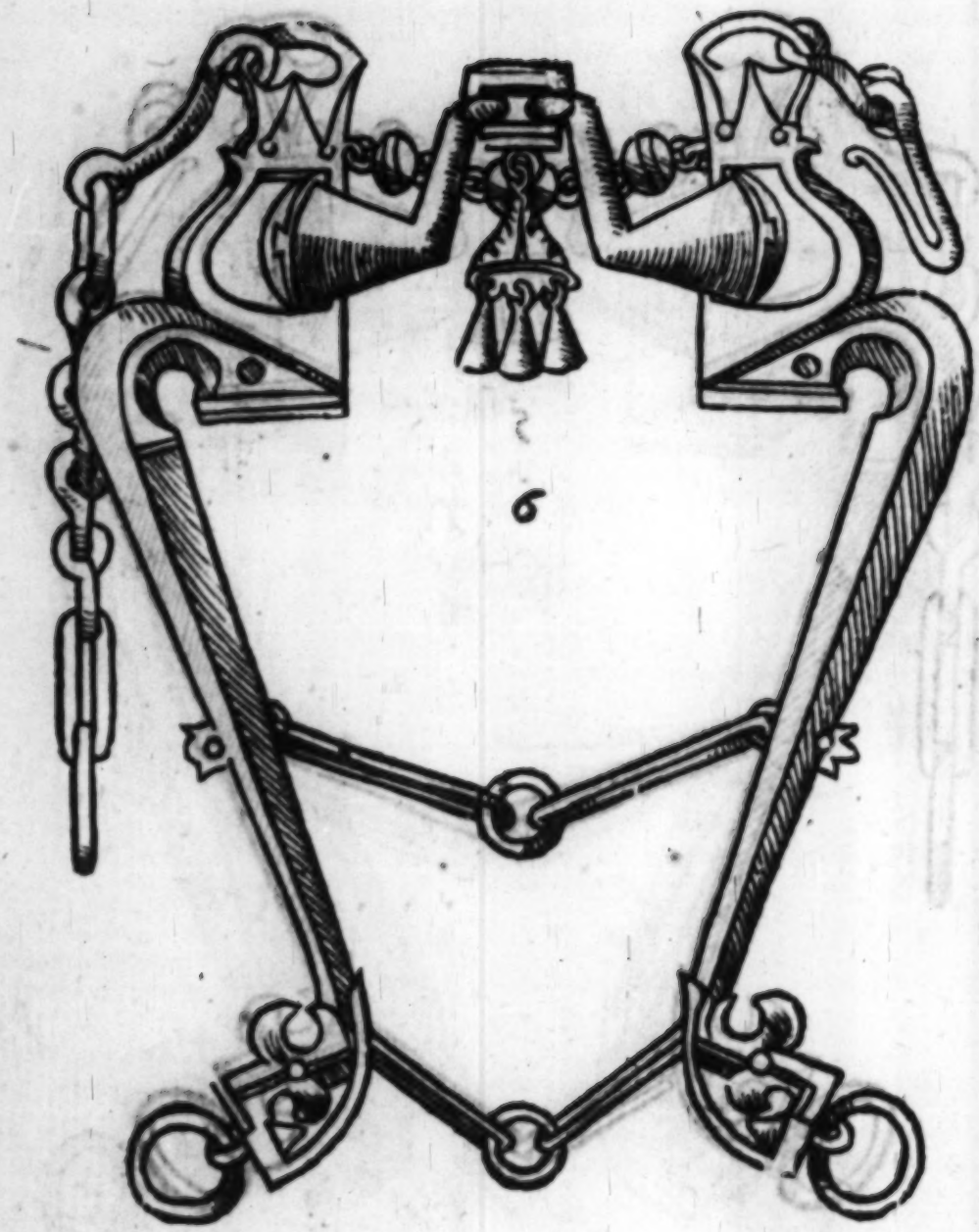
A halfe Canon With an vplet mouth, ioined With one plighe With= in another.



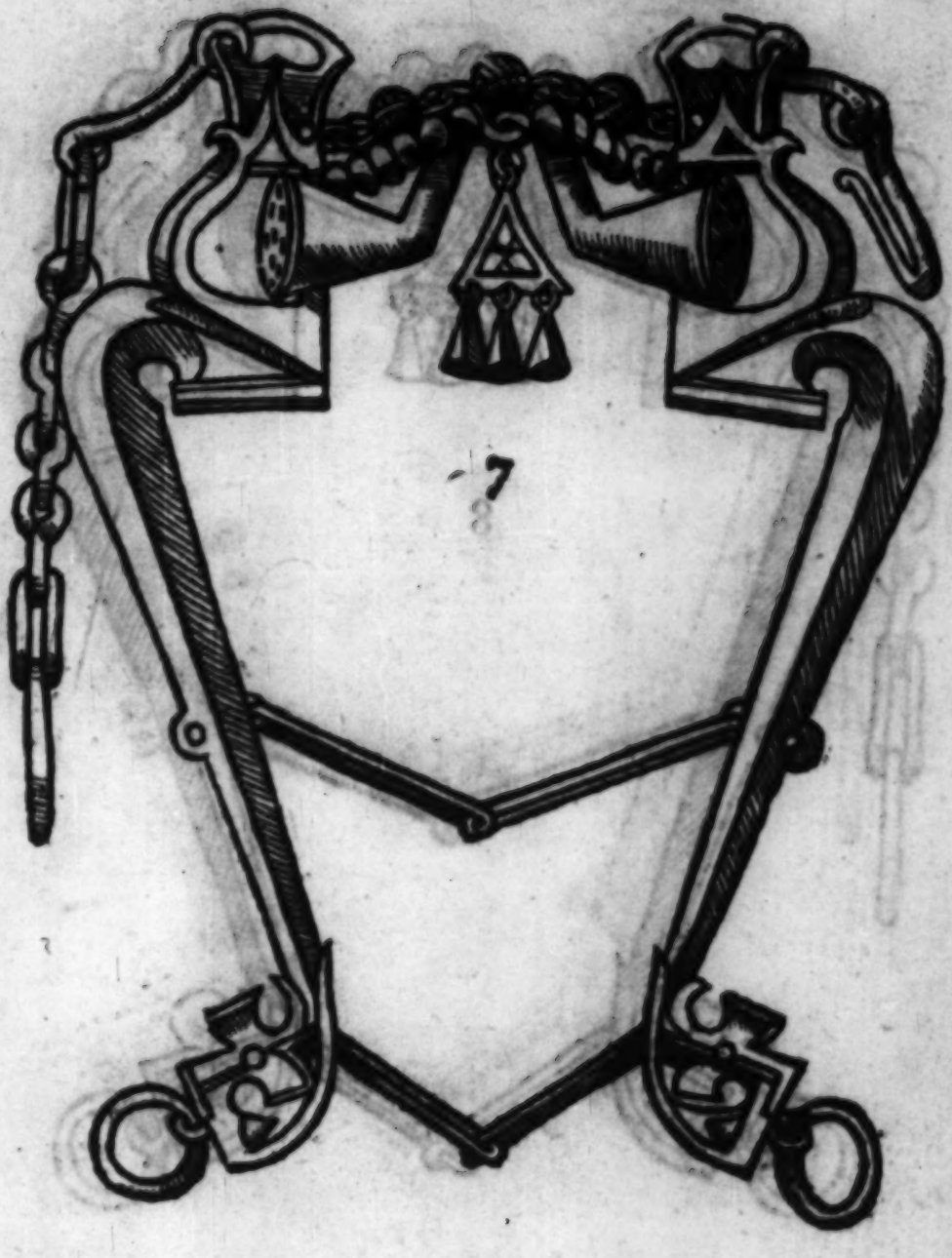
A halfe Canon with a broken port, ioined with a peece



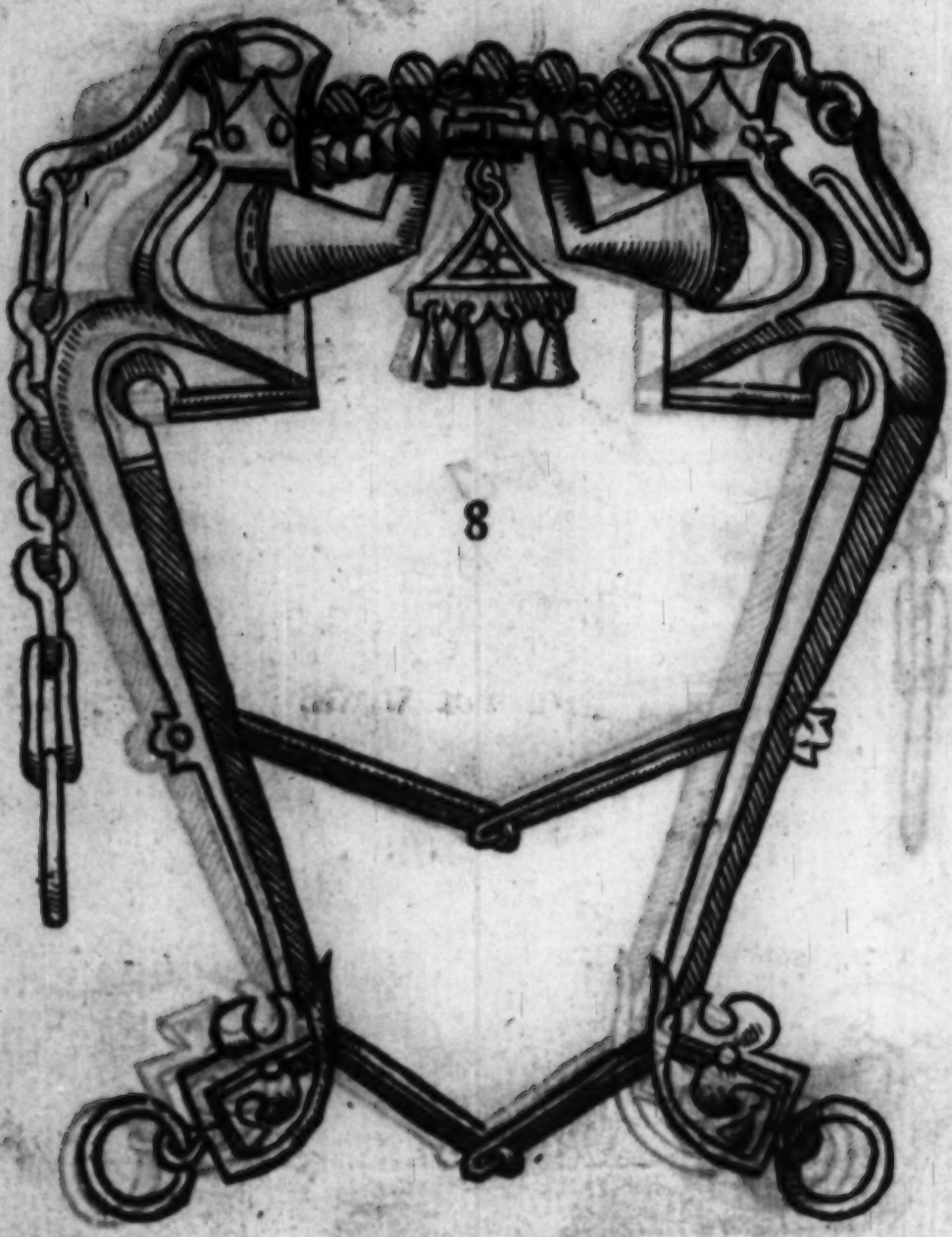
A halfe Canon With an vplet mouth, tolned With a peece.



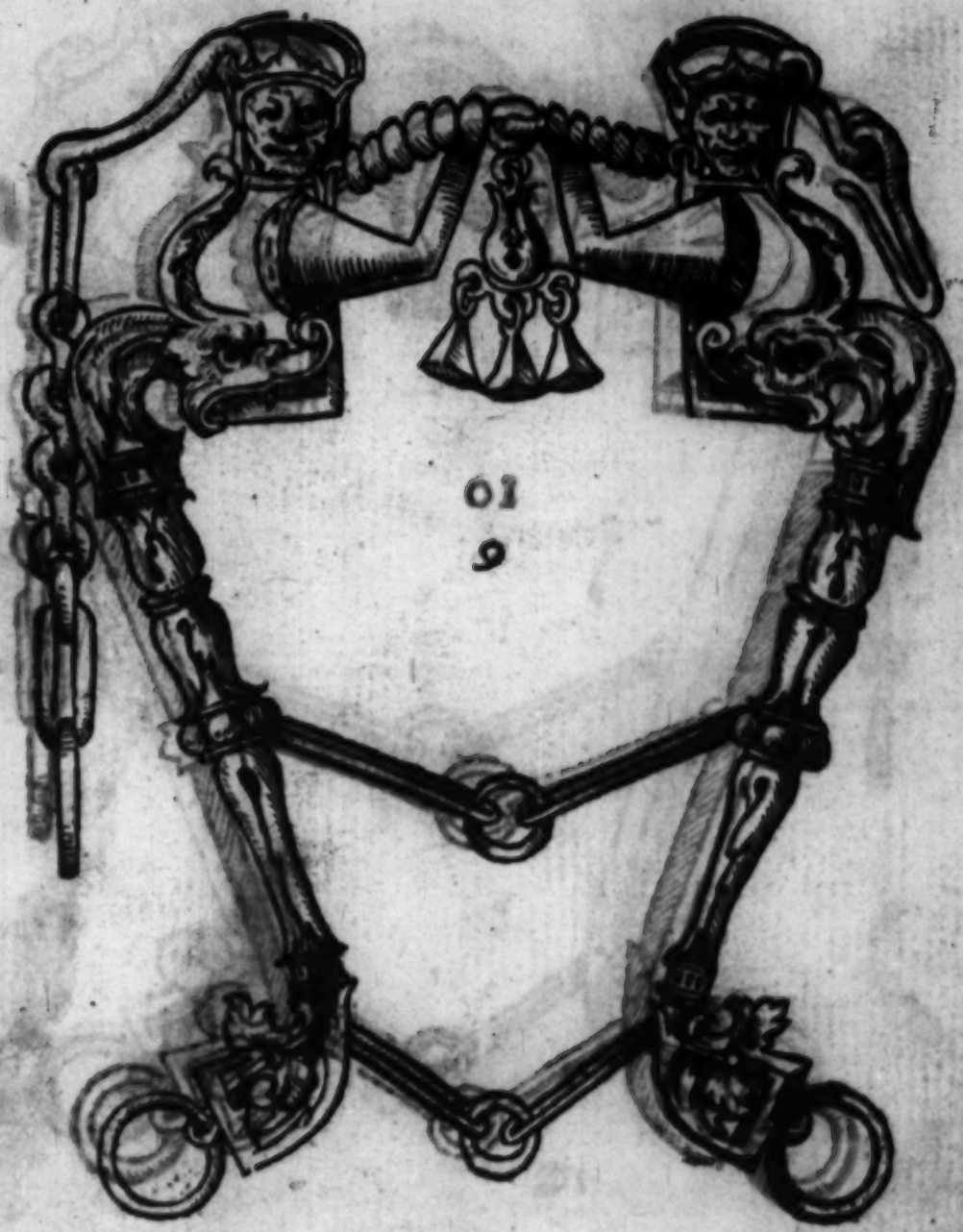
A Canon With an vpſet mouth, complete.



A Canon with an vplet mouth complete, and ioined with a peece.

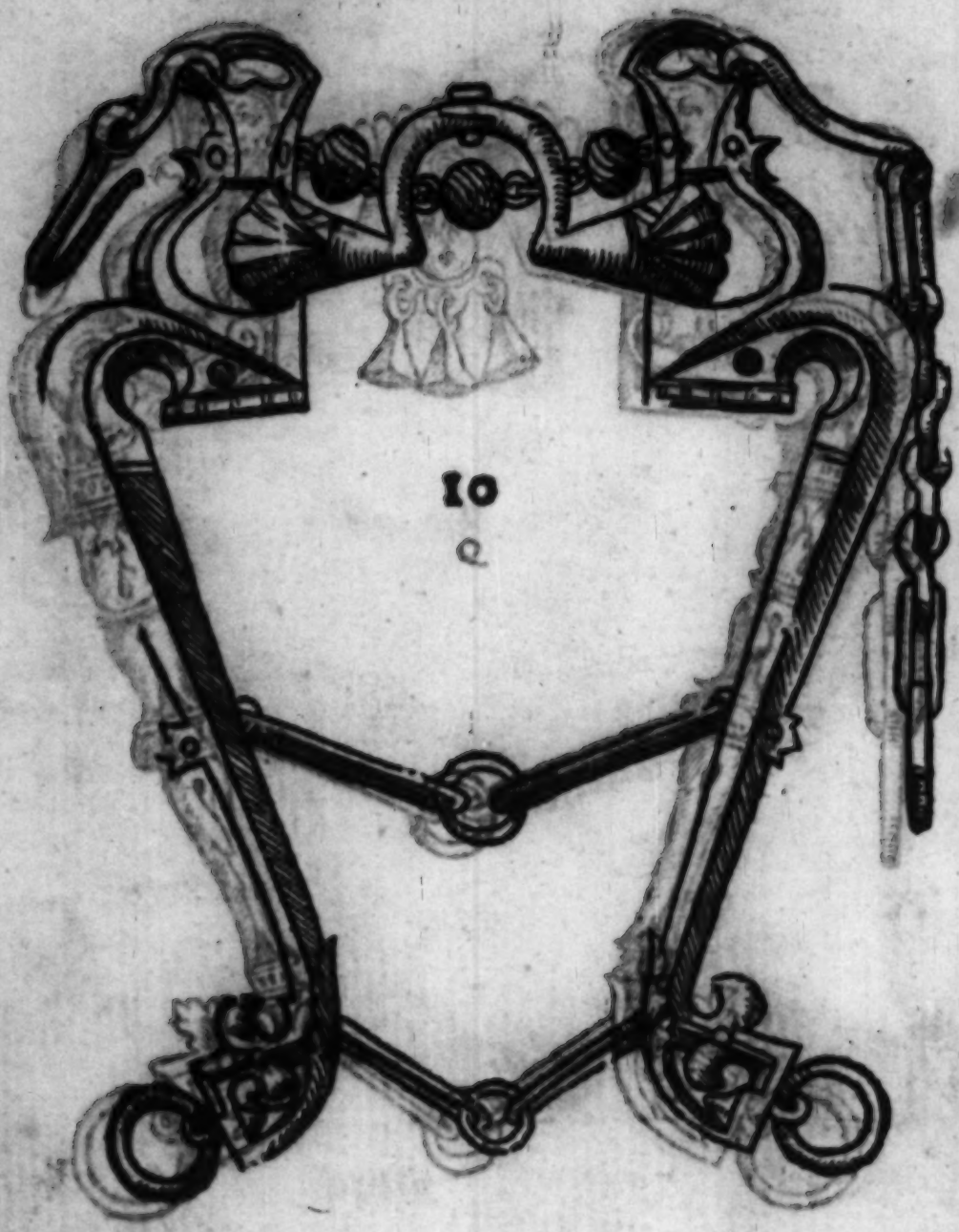


A halfe Canon with an vpset mouth, hauing trenches aboue.

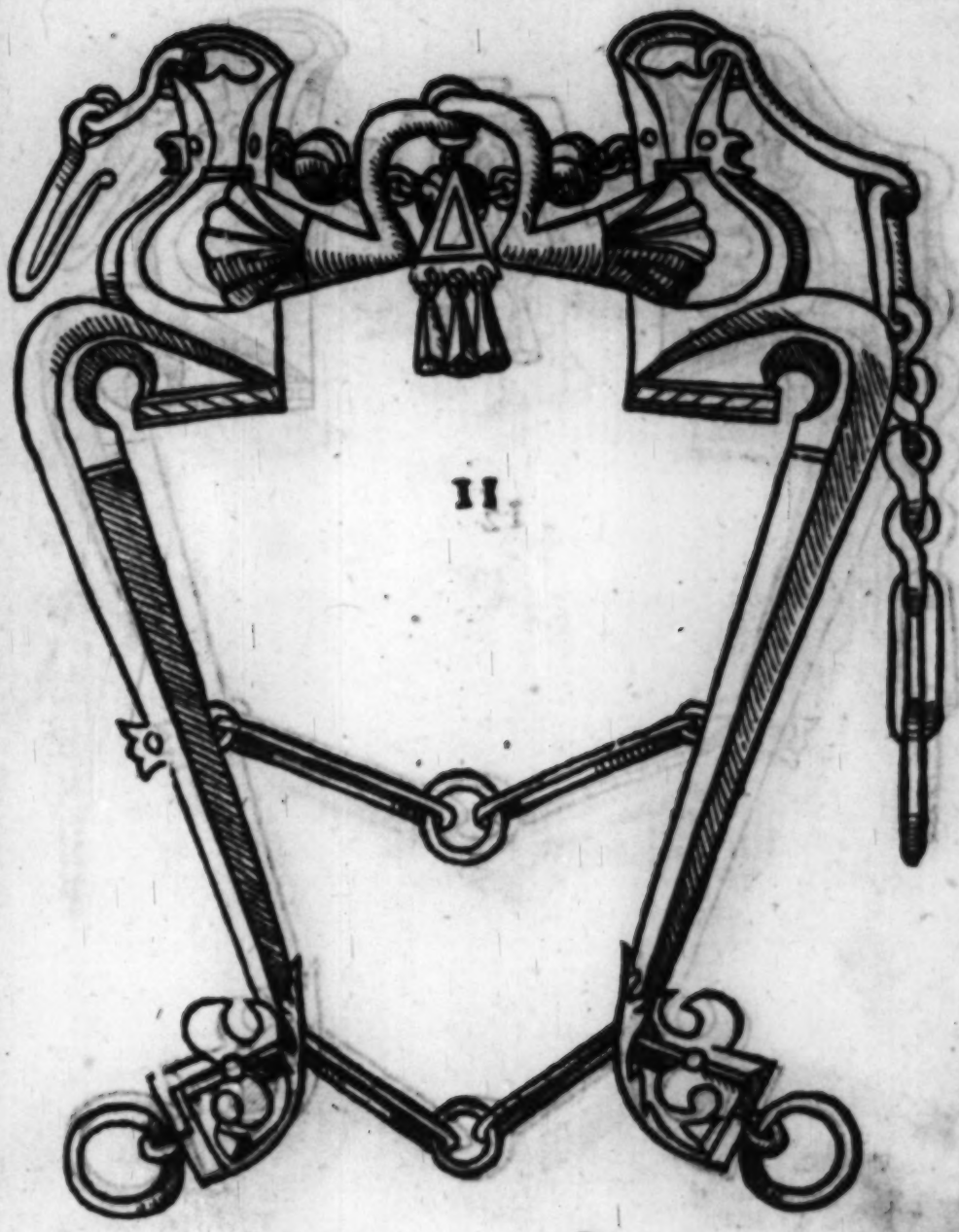


Broken portes and

A halfe Scatch with a broken port, ioined with a riuet naile.



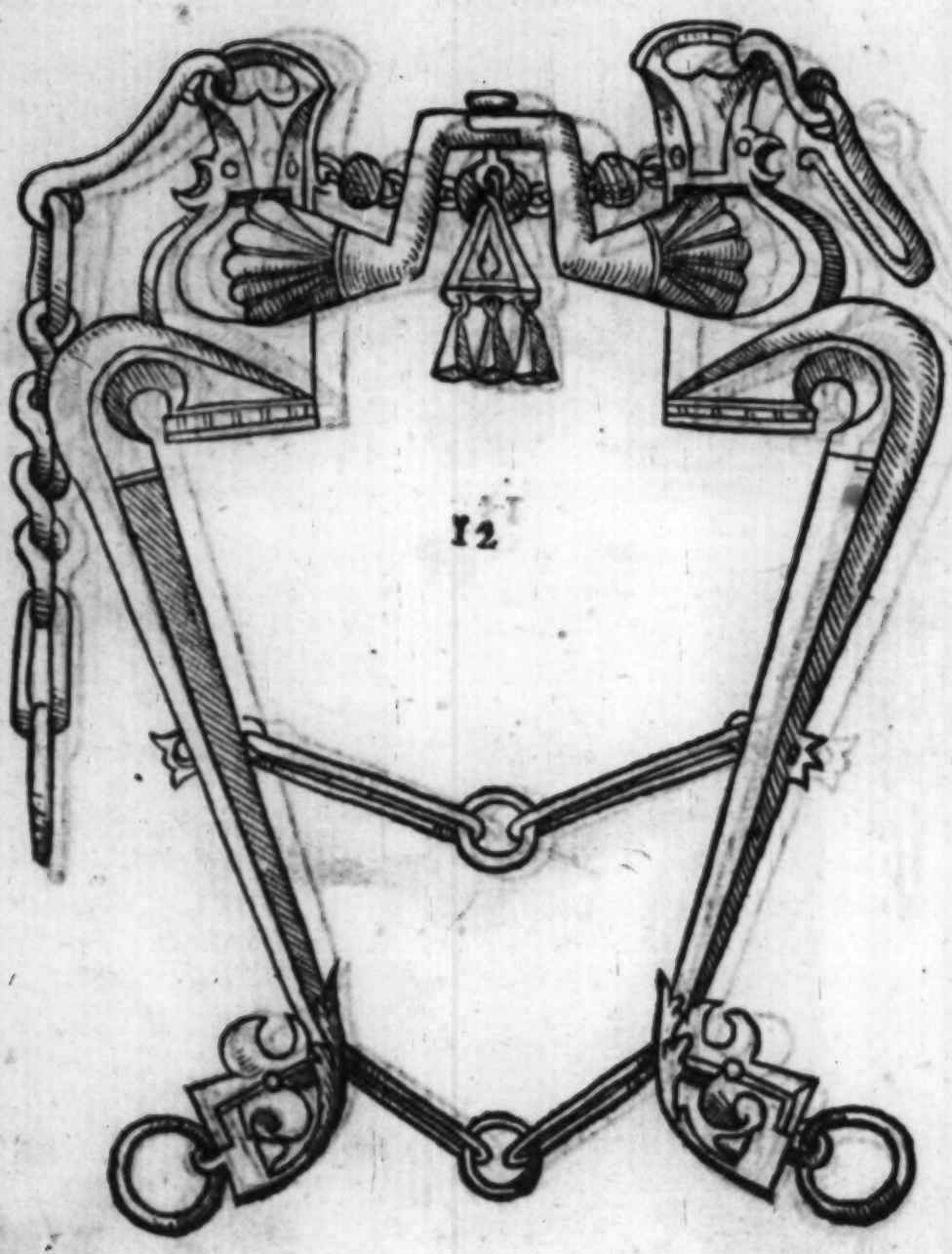
A halfe Scatch with a broken port ioined, With one plight within another.



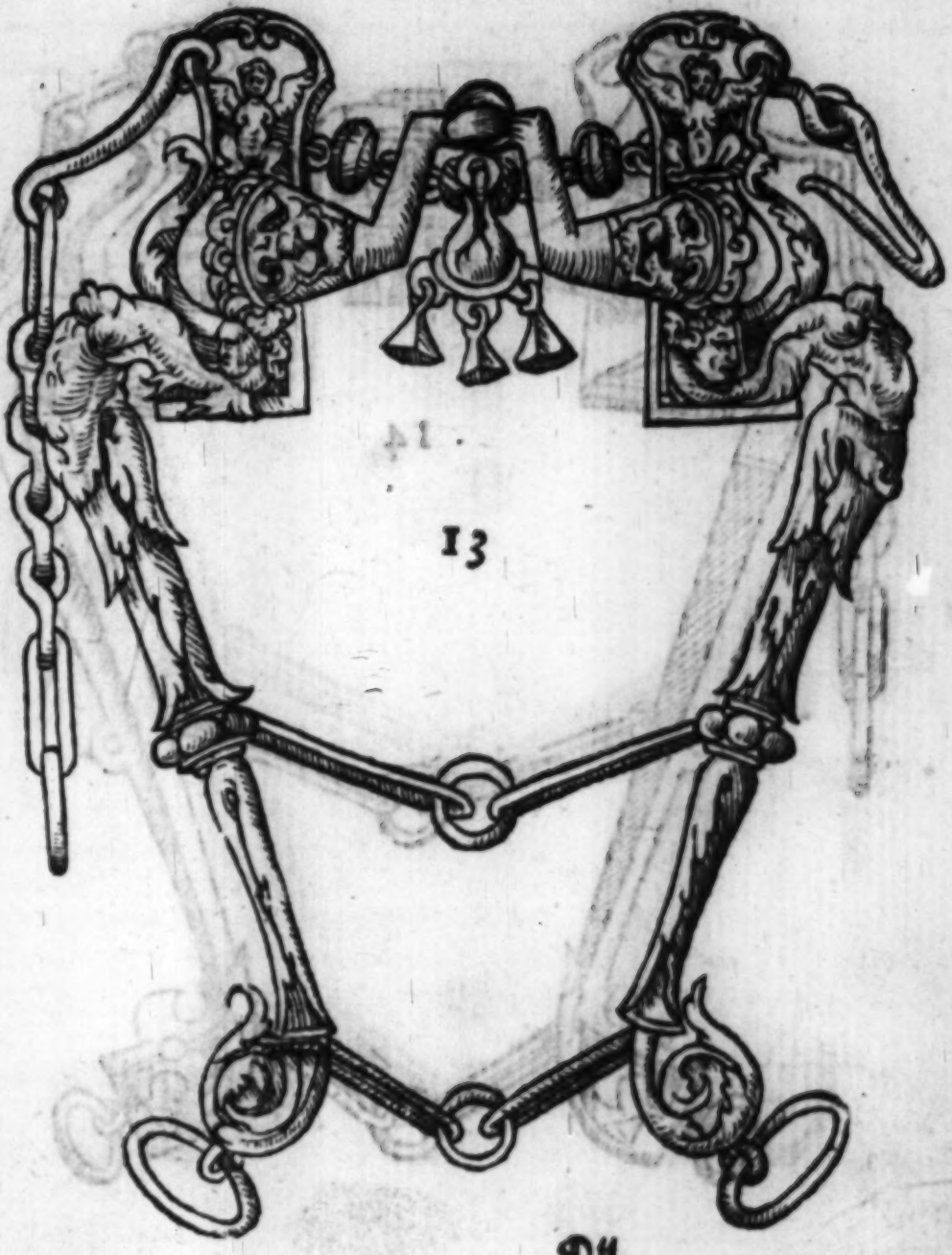
11

D1

A halfe Scatch, with an vplet mouth ioined with a reuet naile.

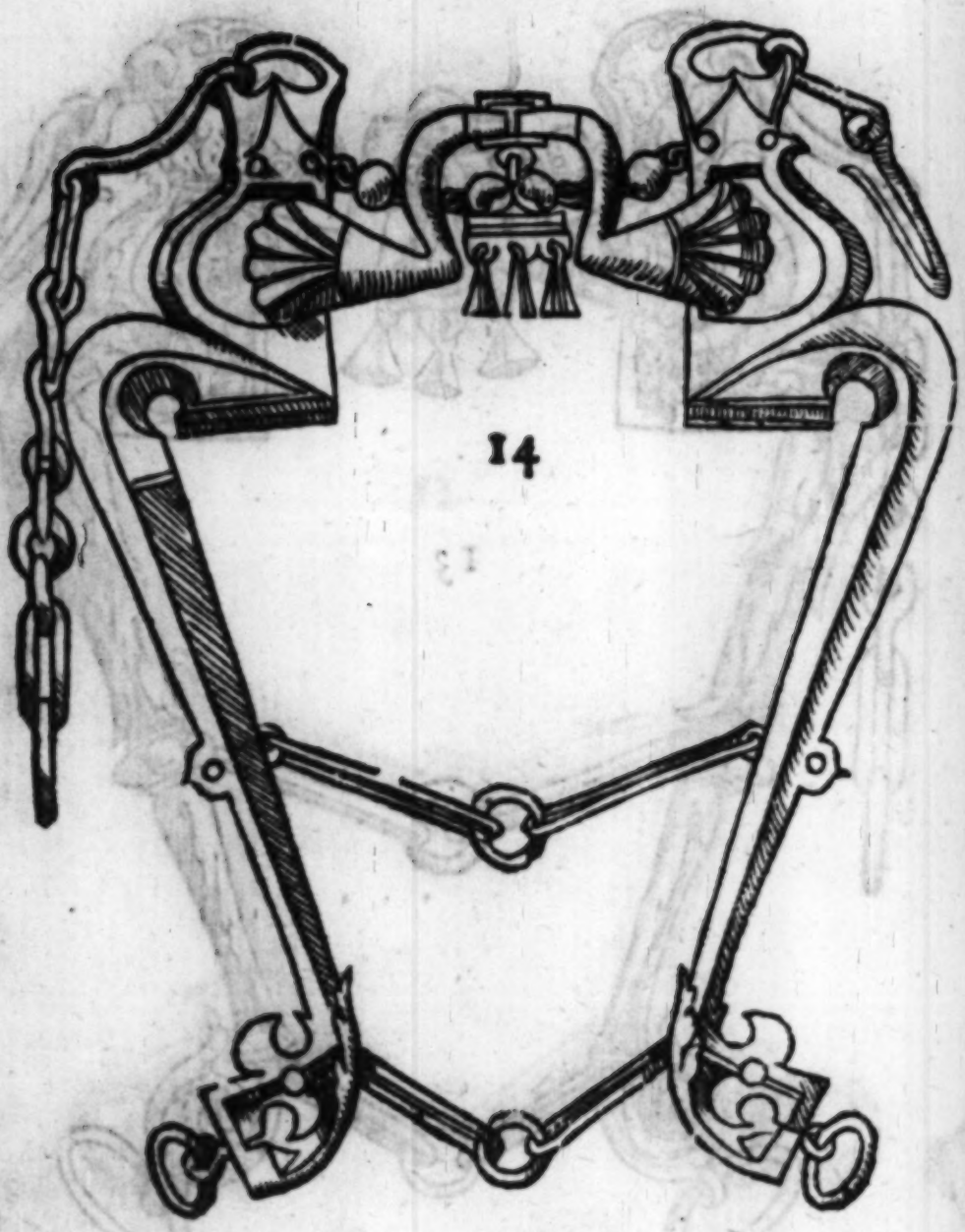


A halfe Scatch With an vpſet mouth ioi-
ned With one plight Within another.

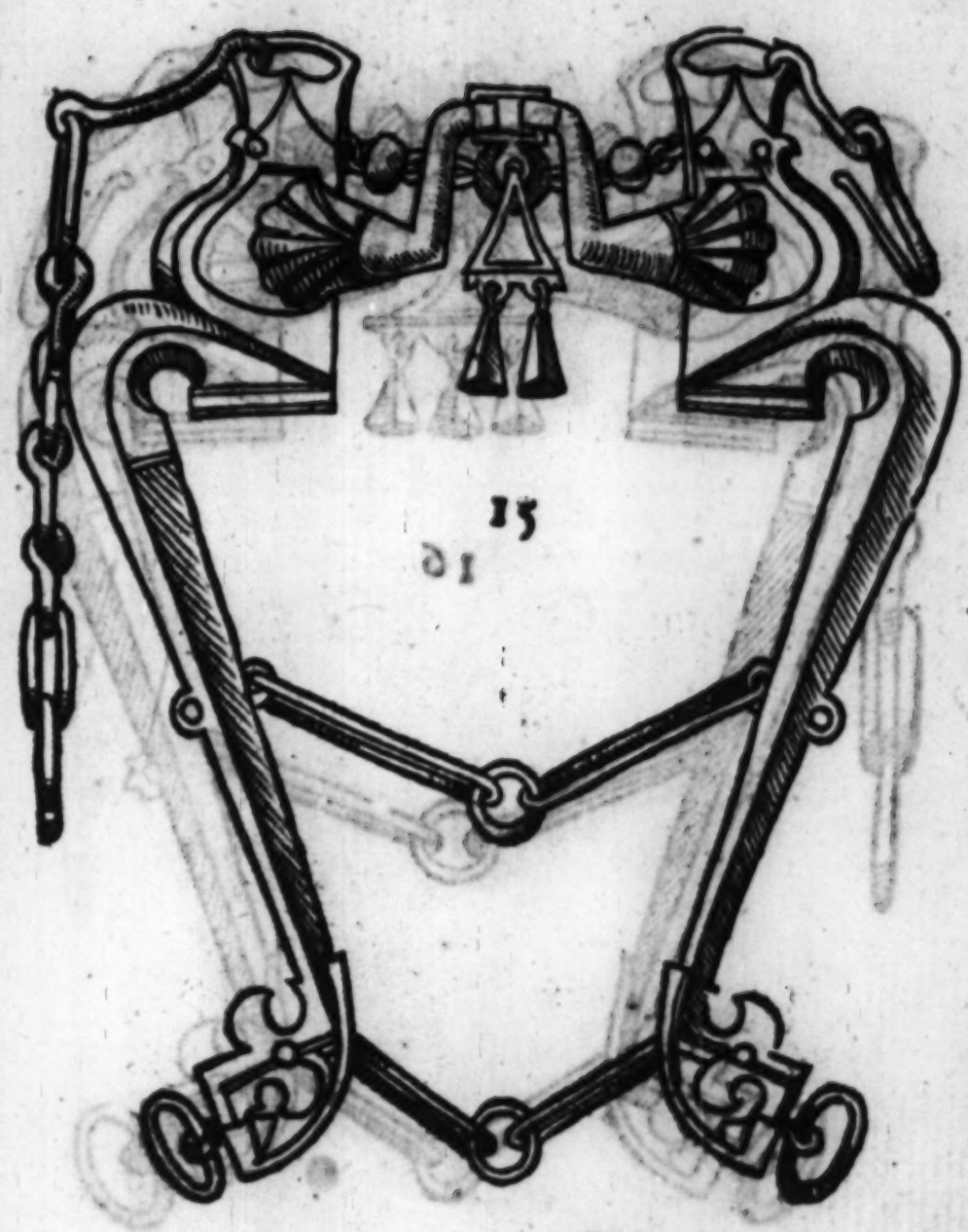


13

A halfe Scatch with a broken port. ioined with a peece.

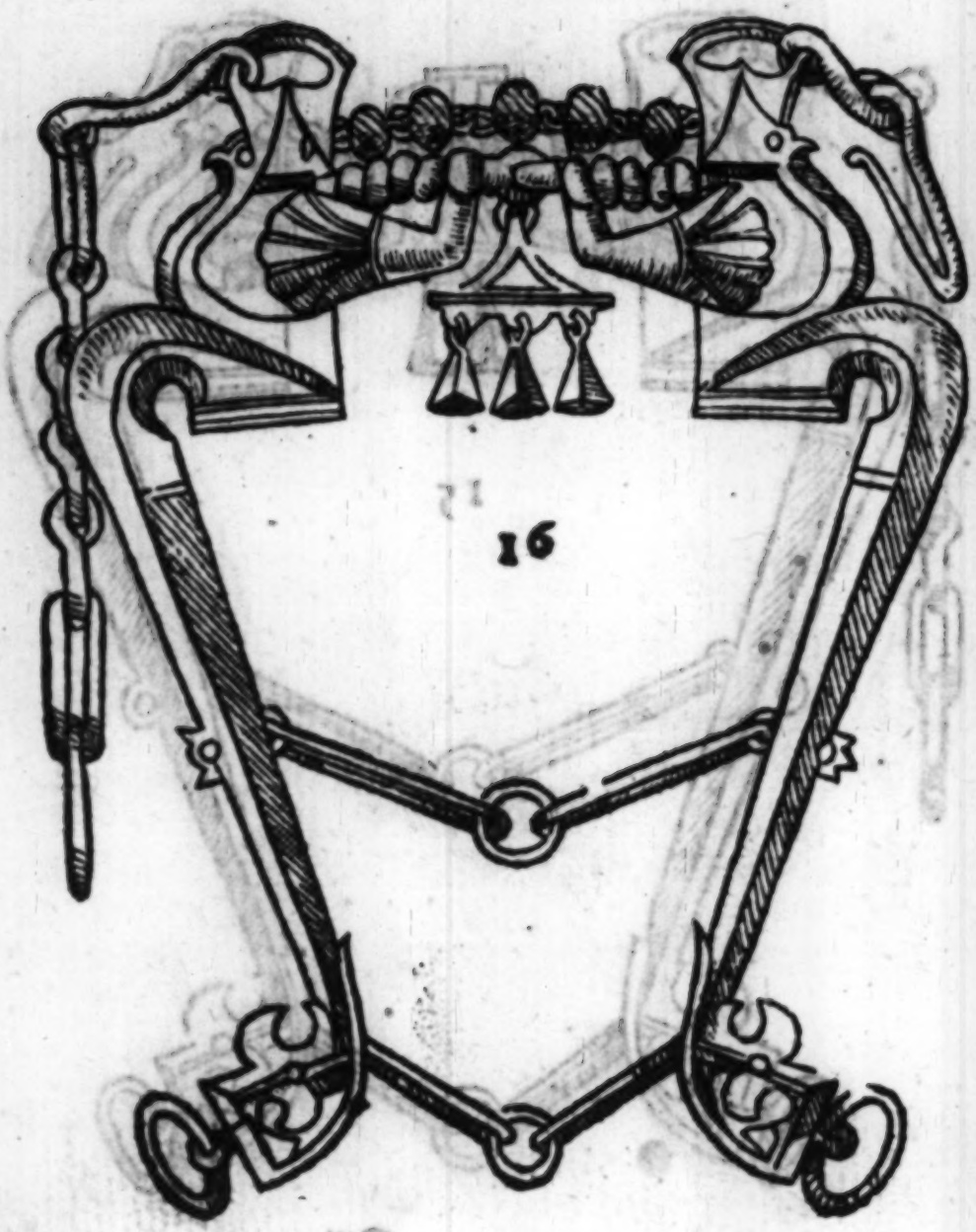


A halfe Scatch with an vpset mouth ioined with a peece.



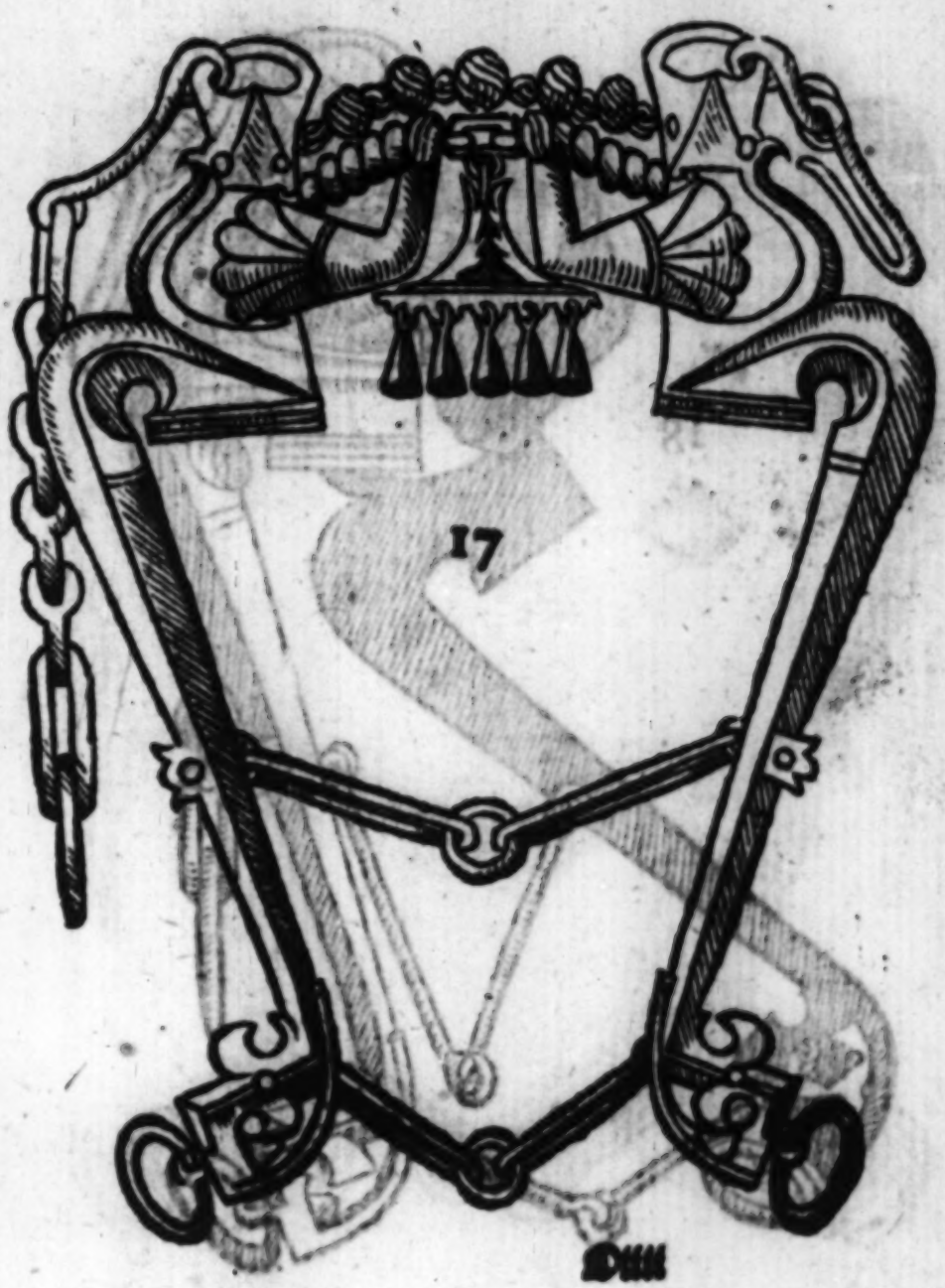
Broken portes and

A Scotch with an vplet mouth
complete.



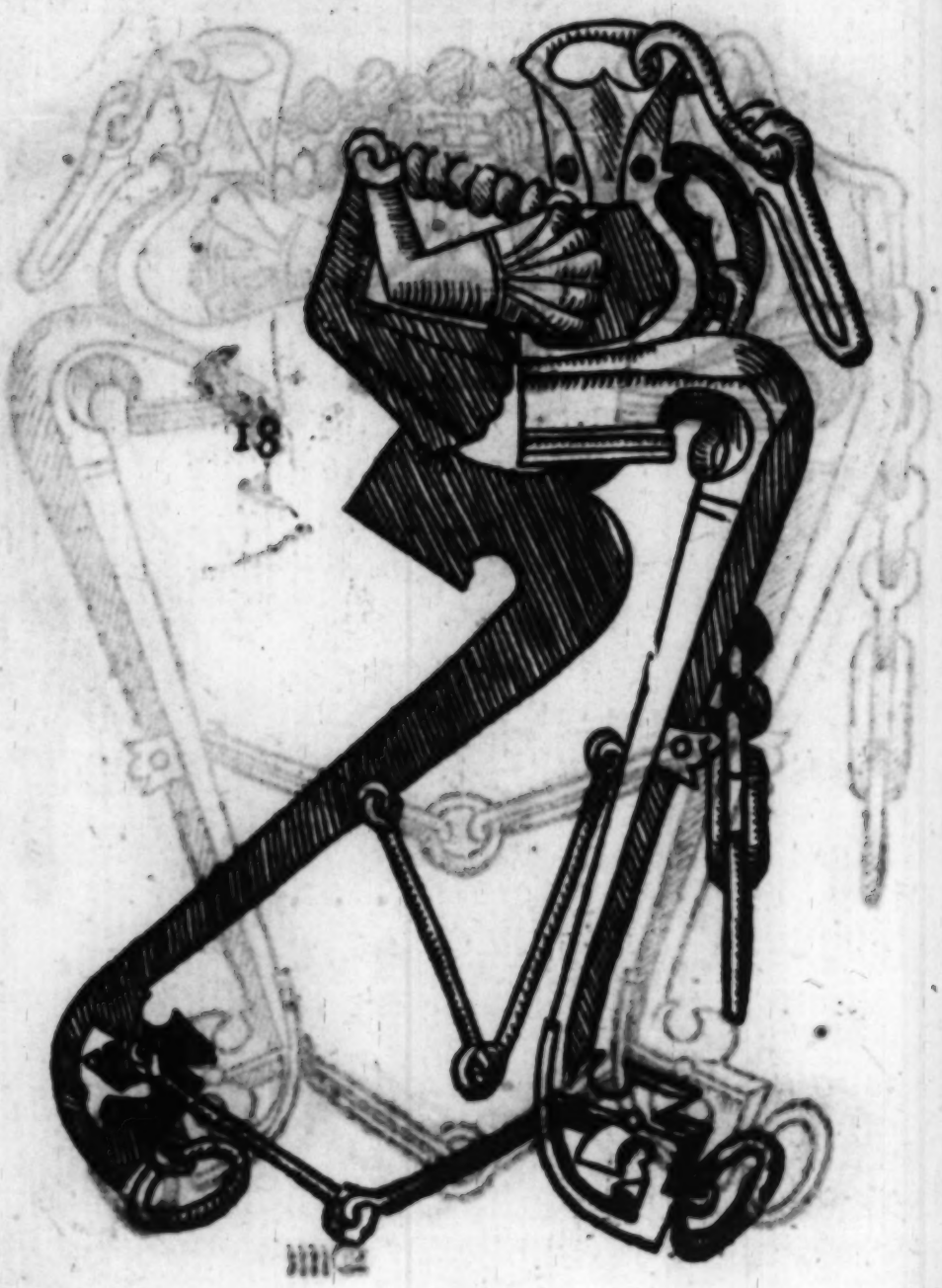
16

A Scotch with an vpset mouth complete, and ioined with a perce.

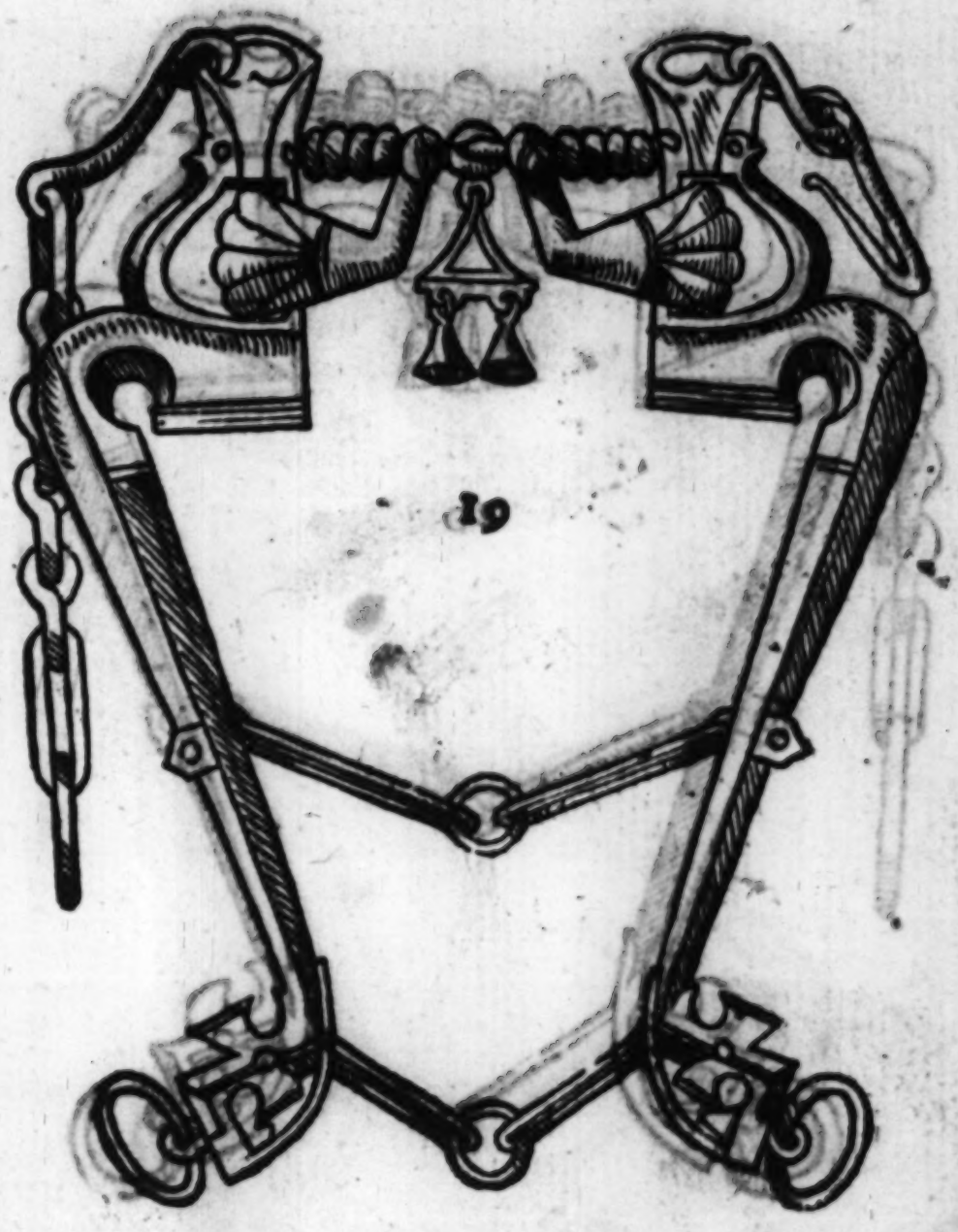


Broken portes and

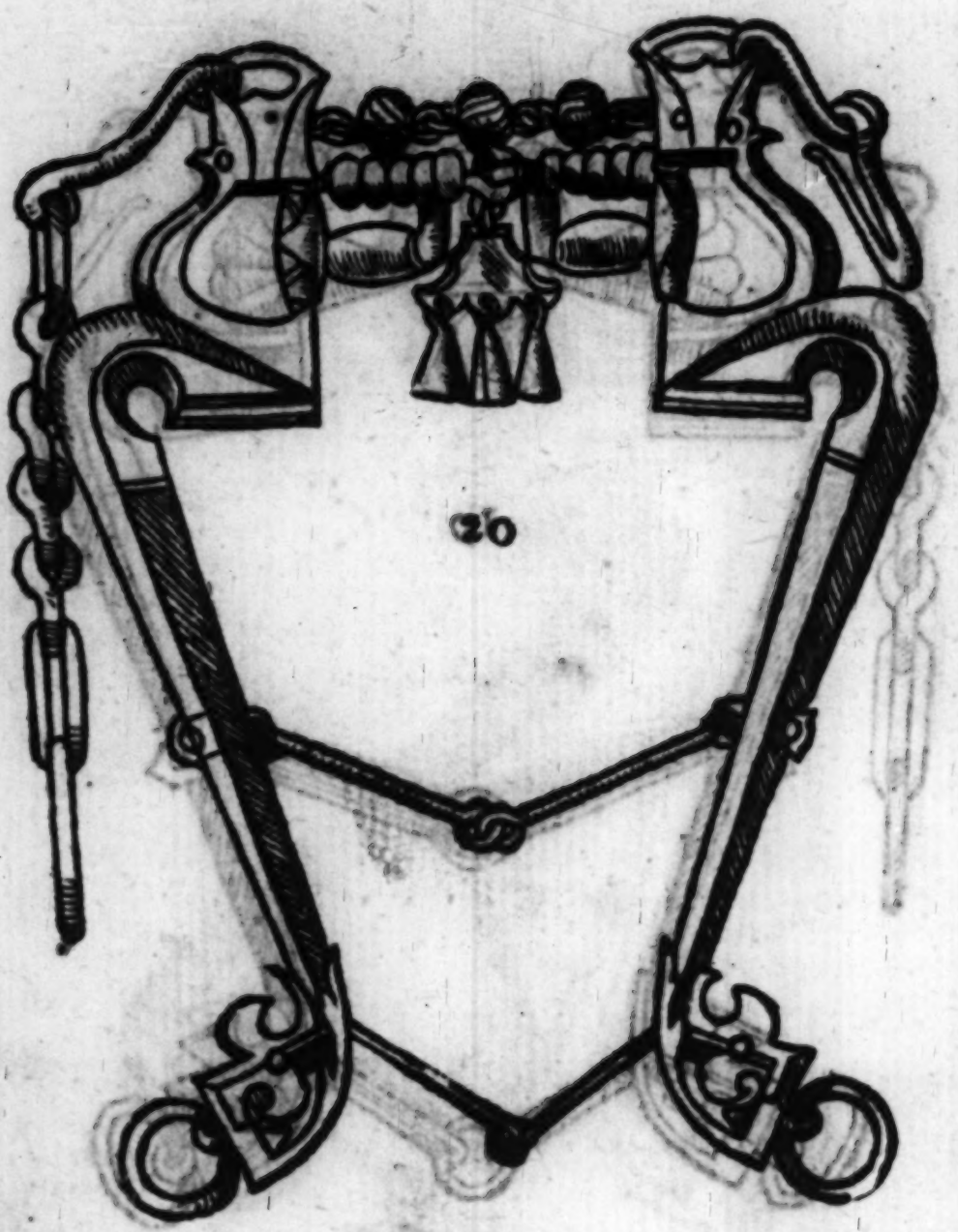
A halfe Scatch with an vplet mouth,
With the insides turned outwarde,
to shewe the Weltes.



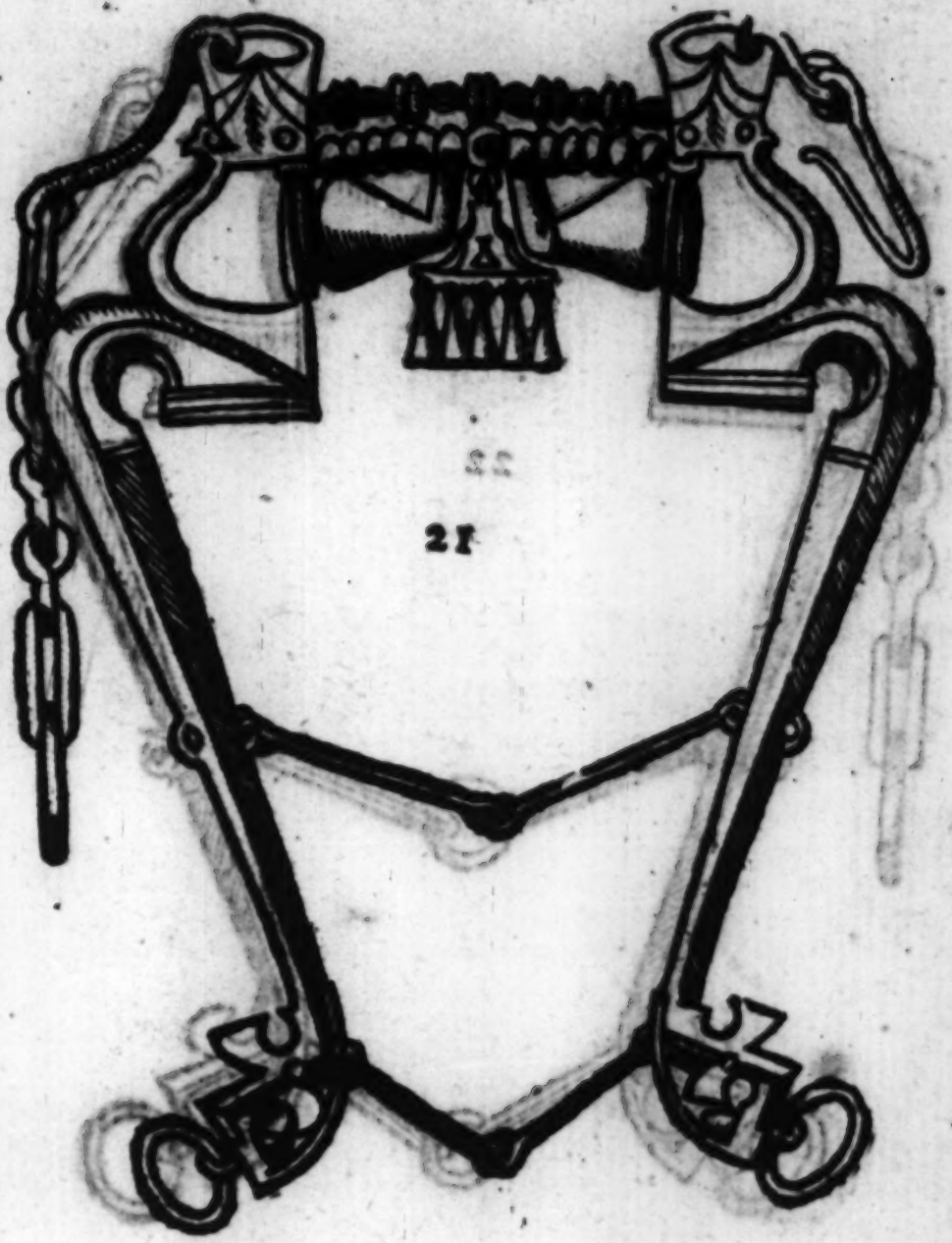
A haile Scotch with an vpſet mouth, hauing a trench aboue.



A Cattes foote or vplet mouth complete
with smouth Olives.

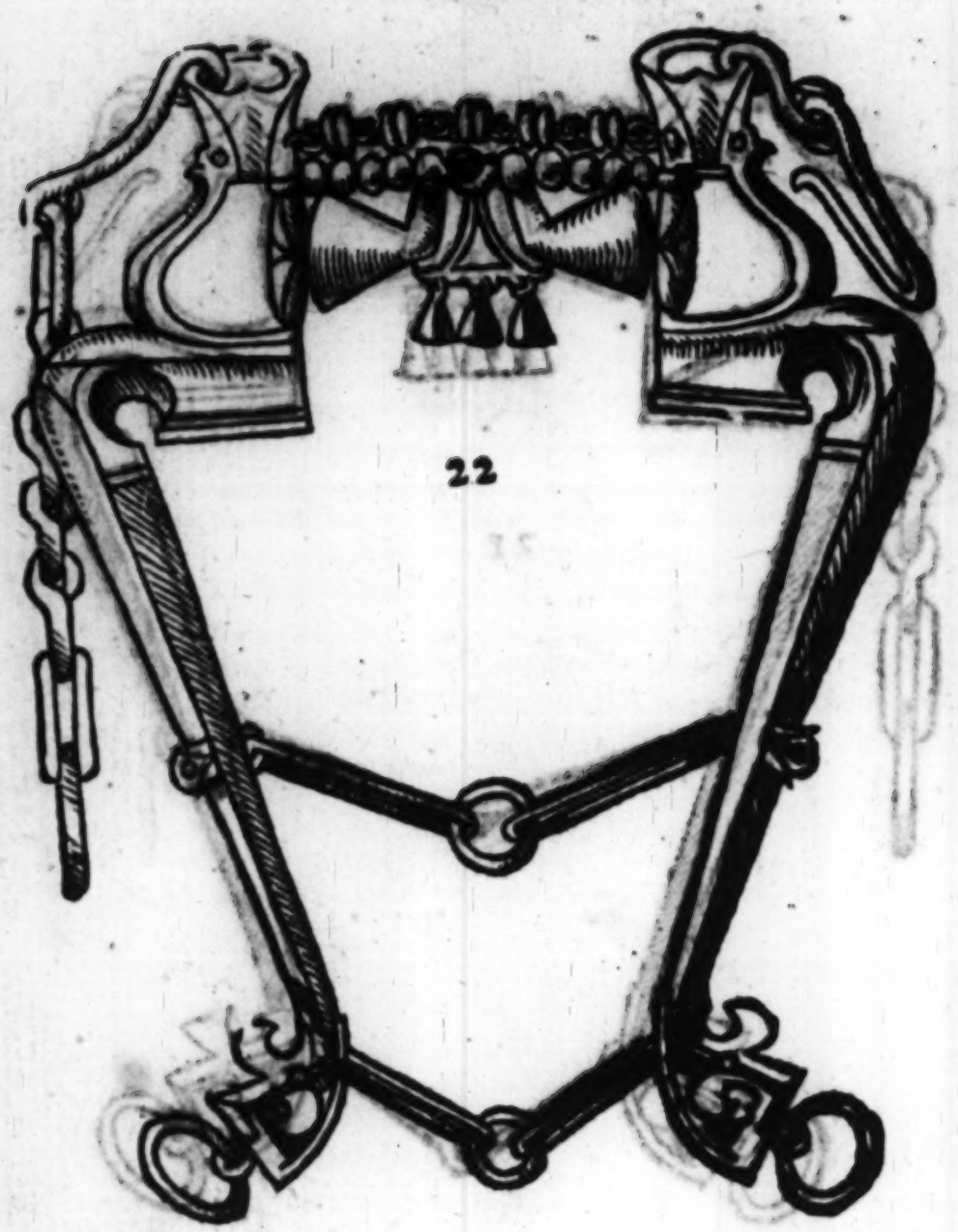


A Cattes foote with peares complete.



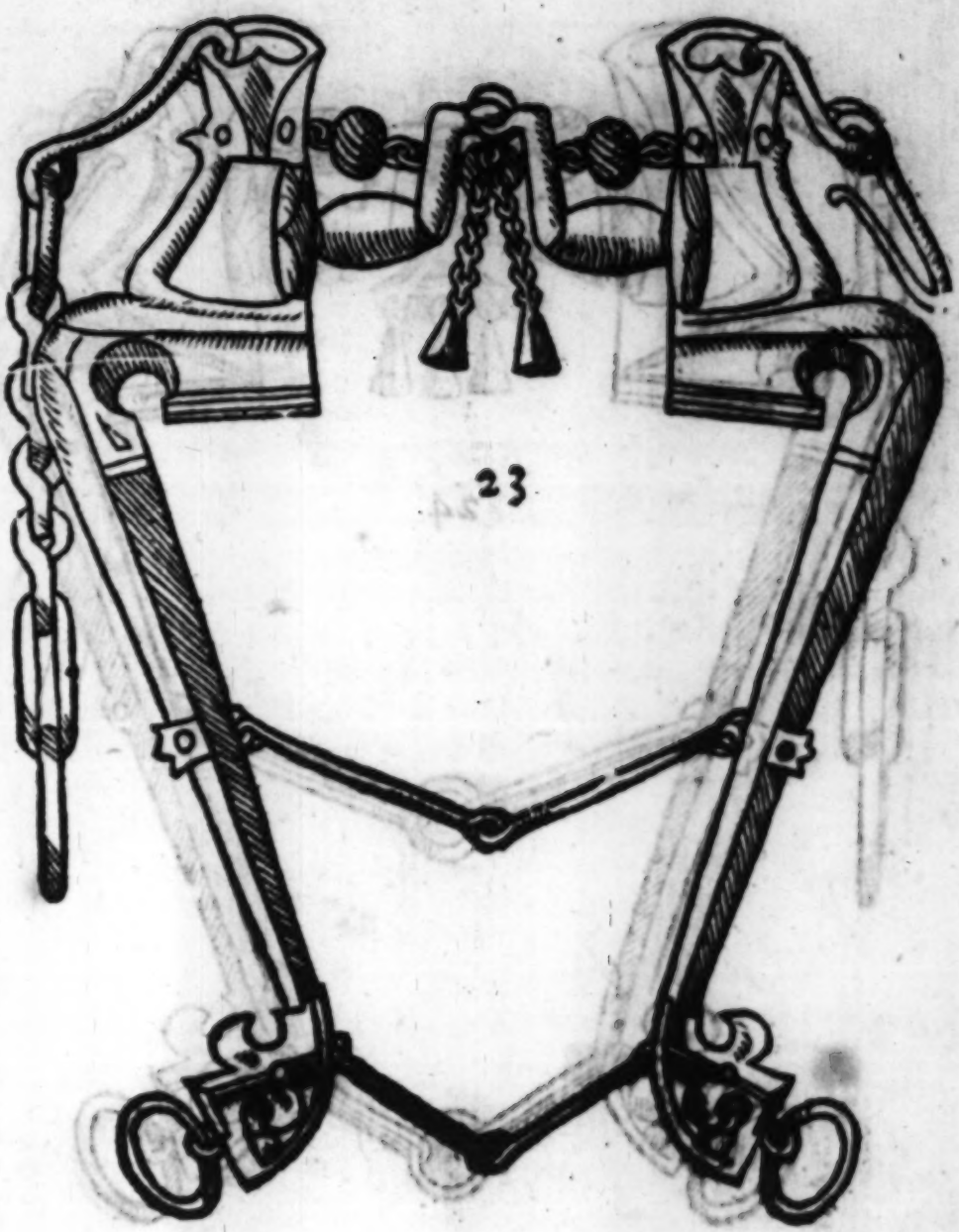
Broken portes, and

A Cattes sowe with Campa-
nels complete.



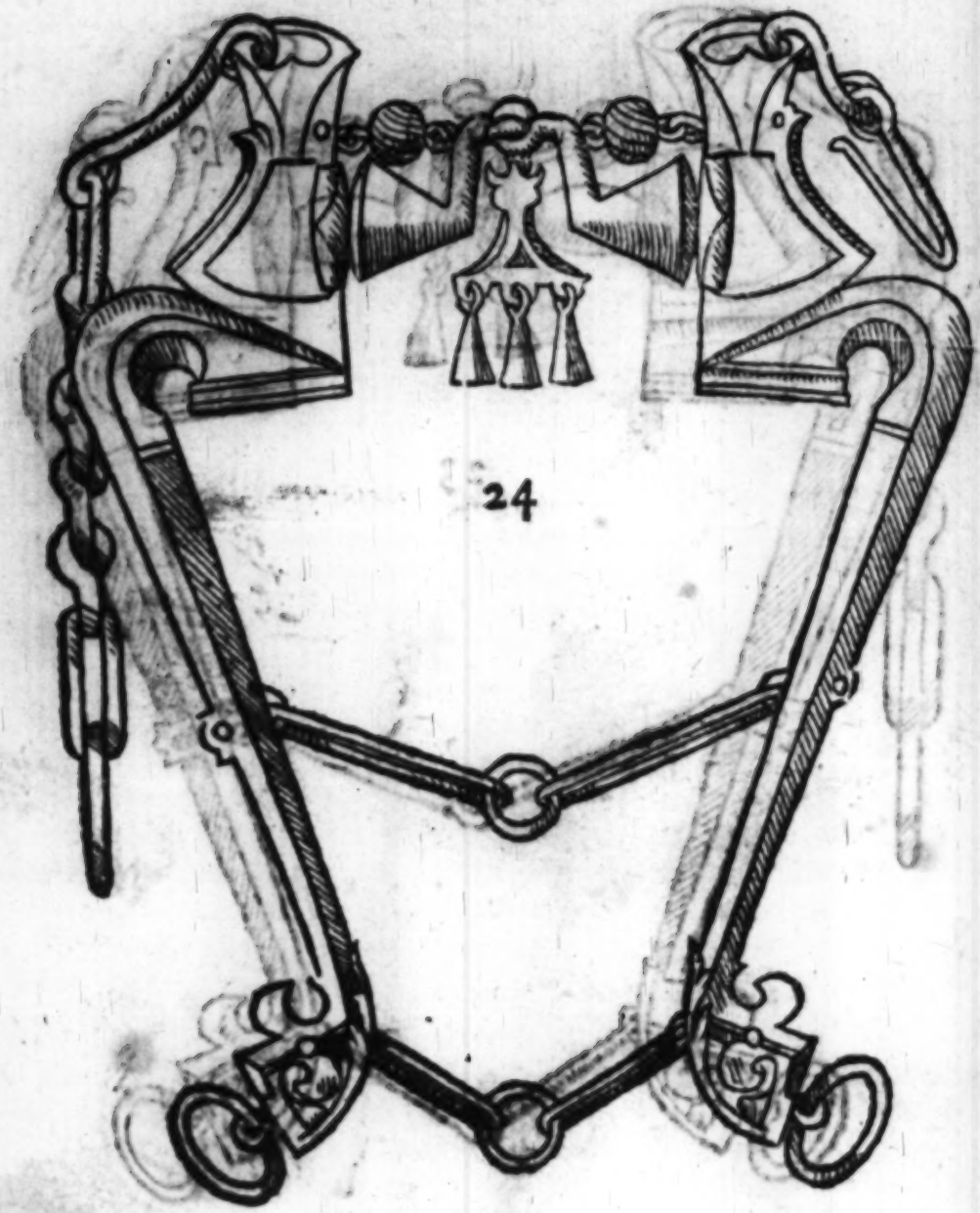
22

A haiſt Cattes foote with Olmes.

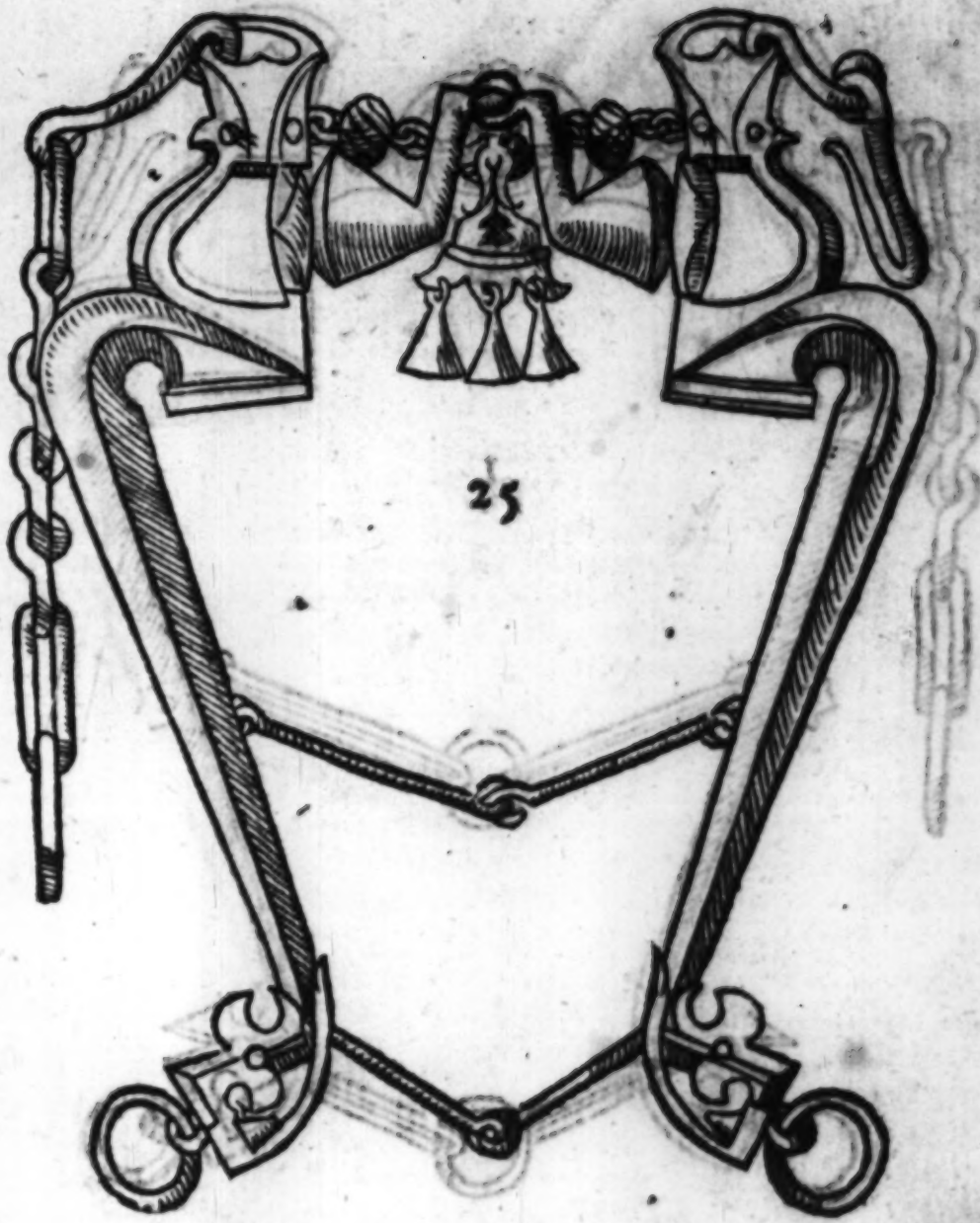


Broken portes, and

A halfe Cattes foote with peares.

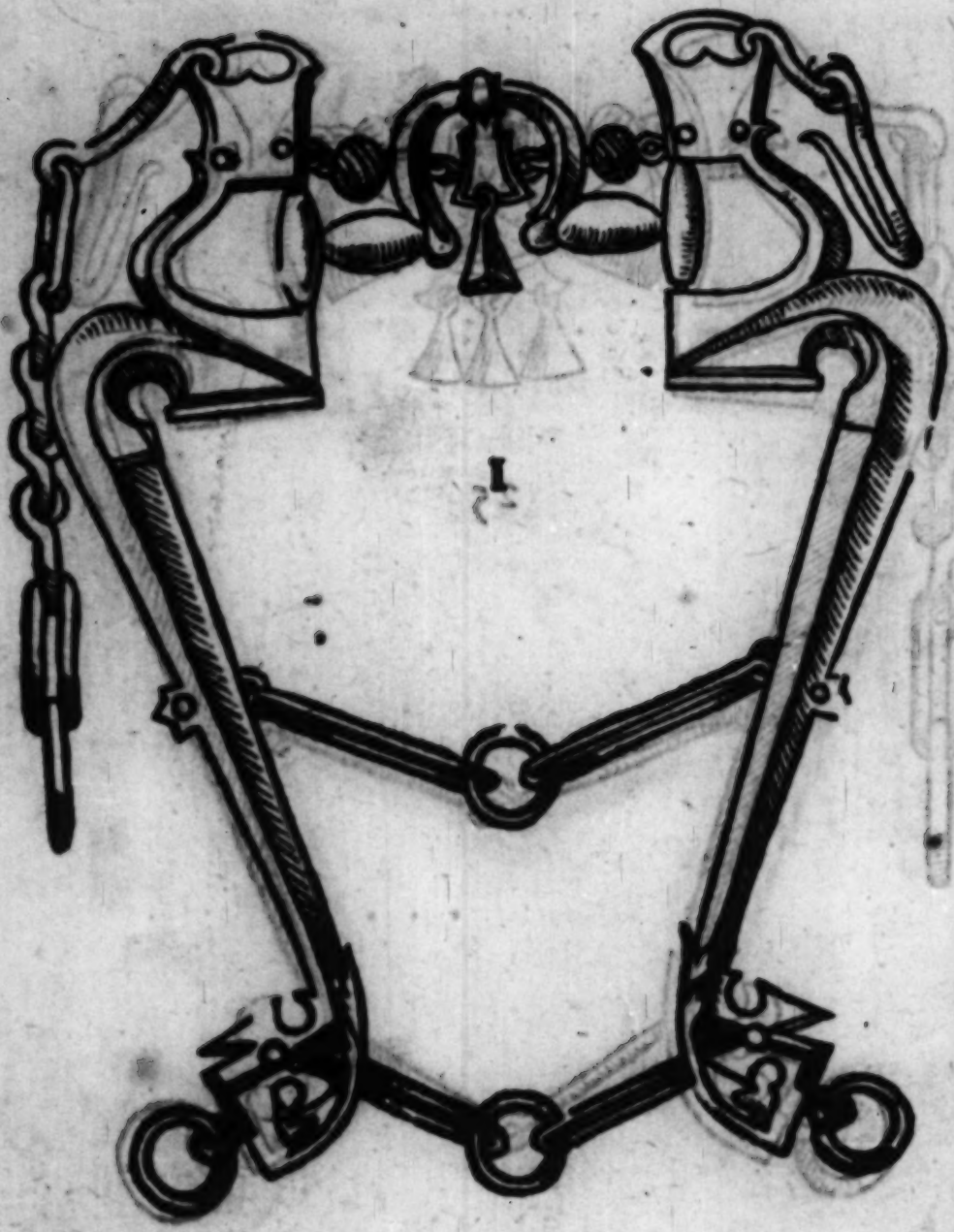


A halfe Catter foote with Coupanele.

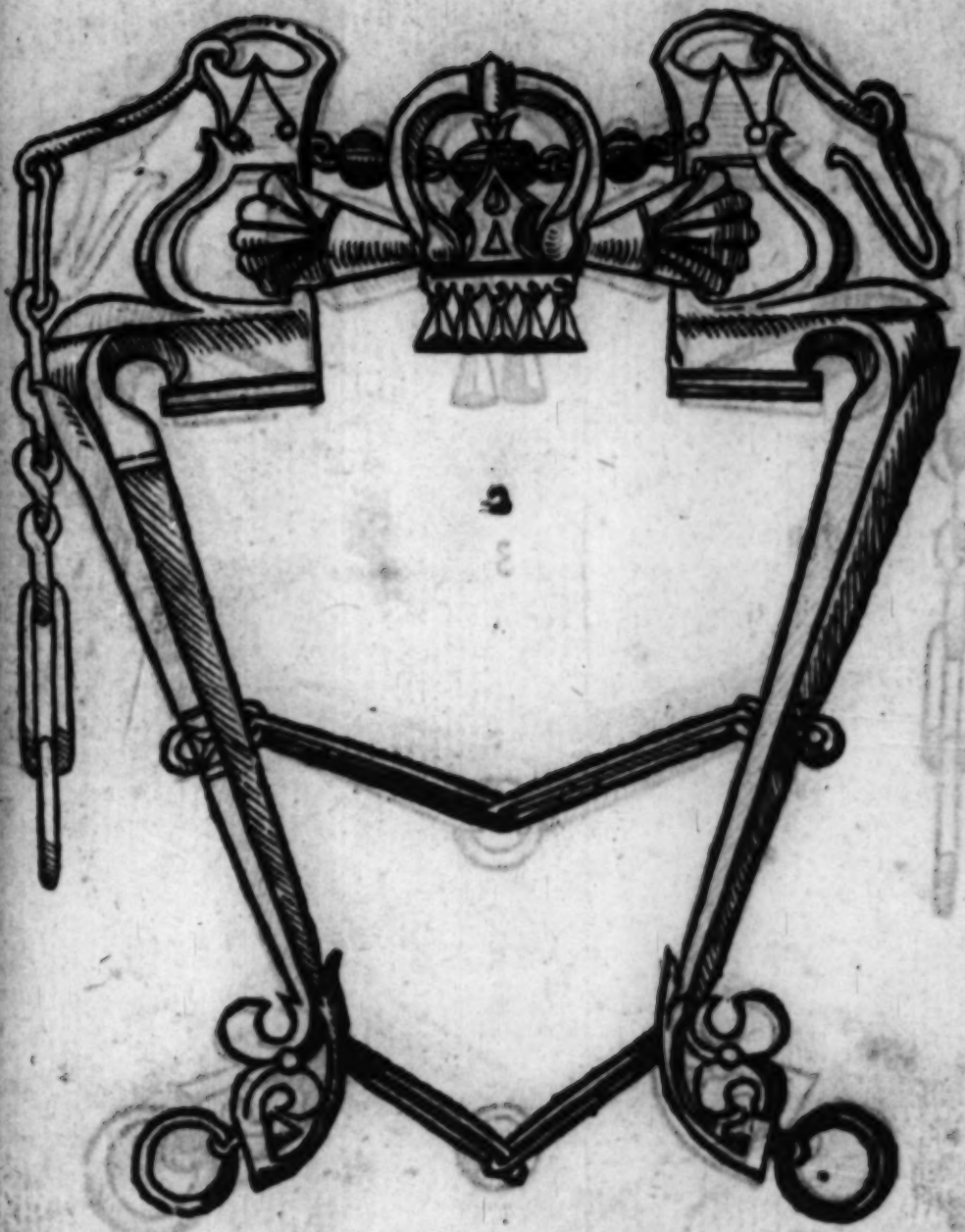


Whole portes.

A Whole port with Dimes.



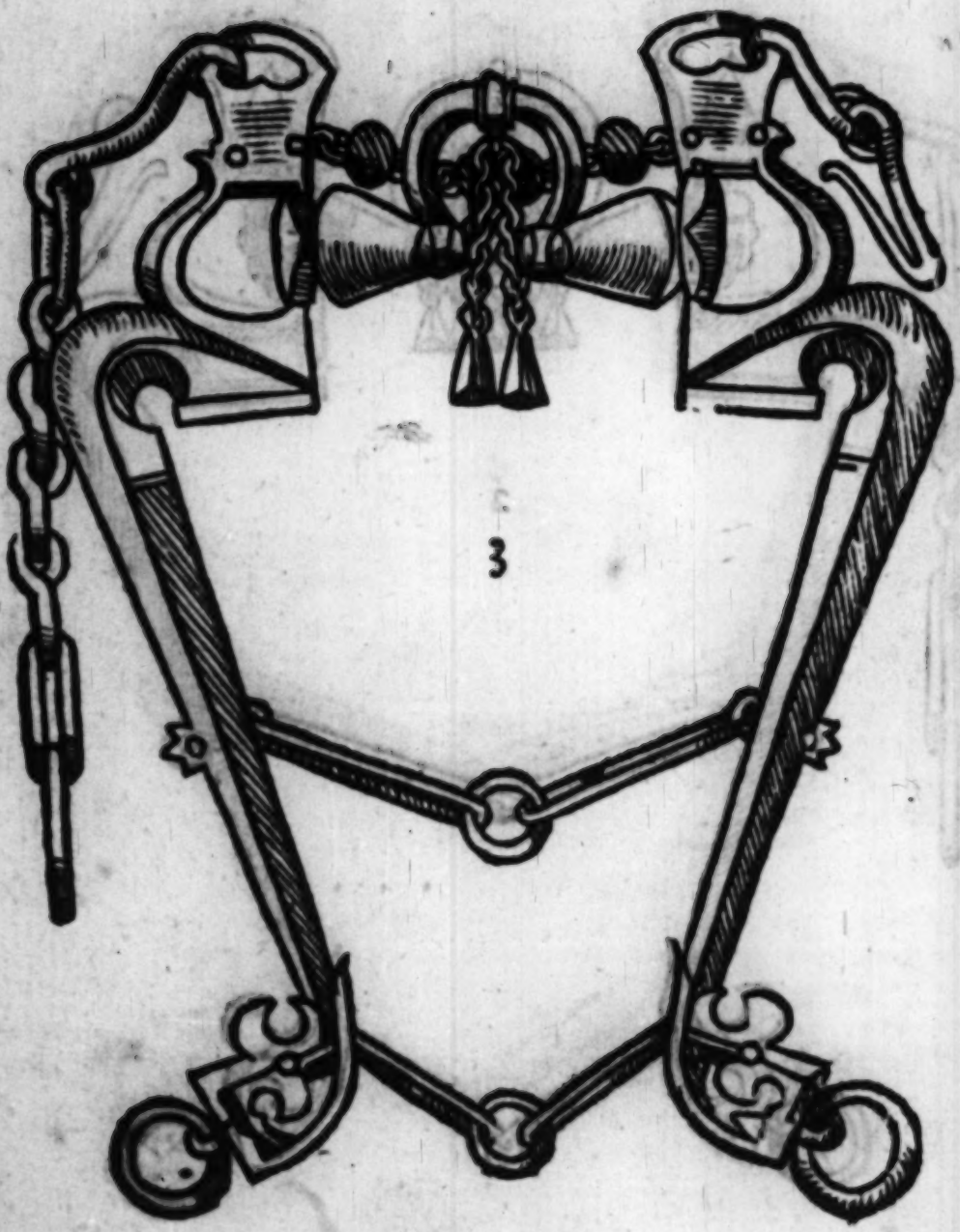
A Scotch with a whole port.



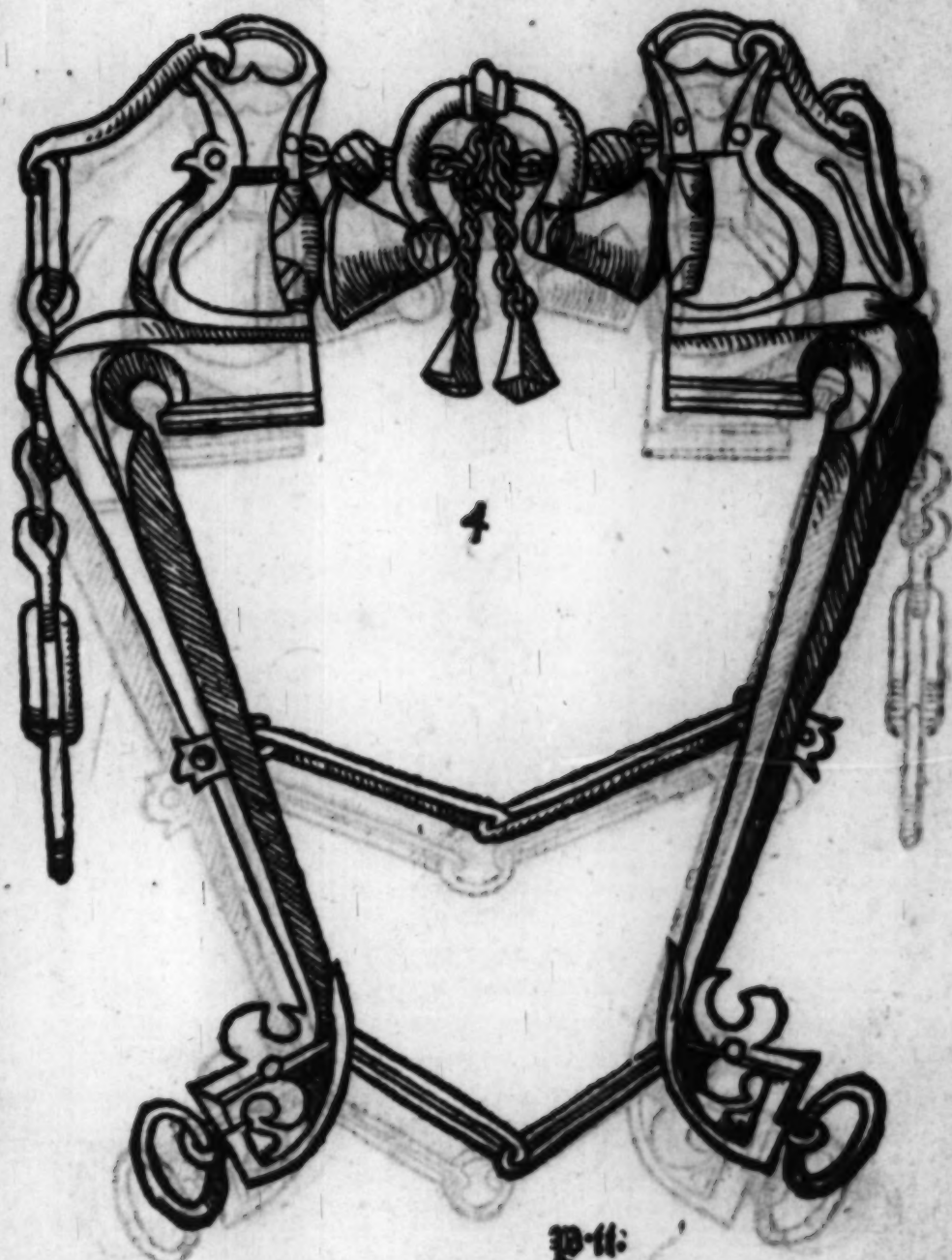
pt:

whole portes.

A whole port with Peares.

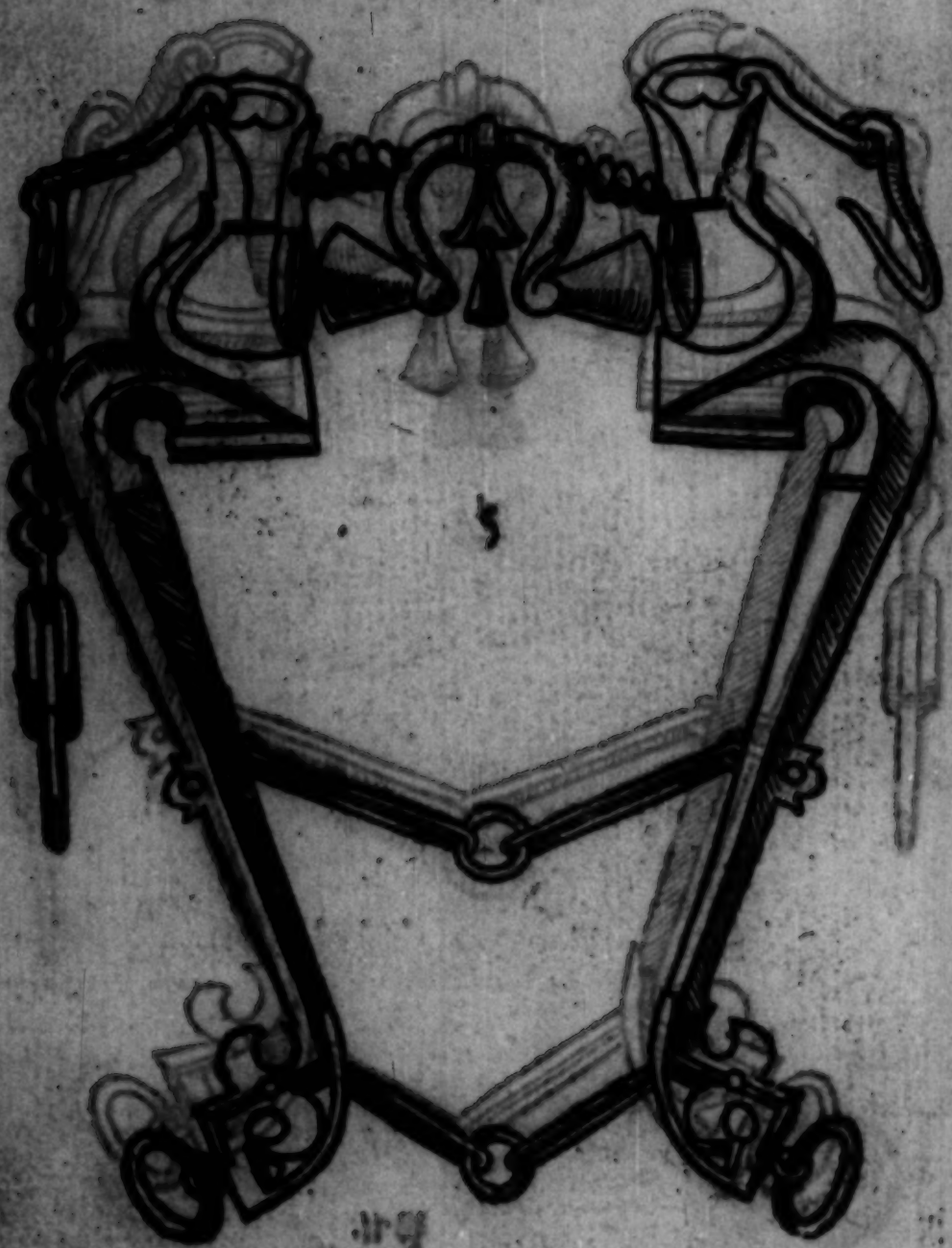


A whole port With Campanels.

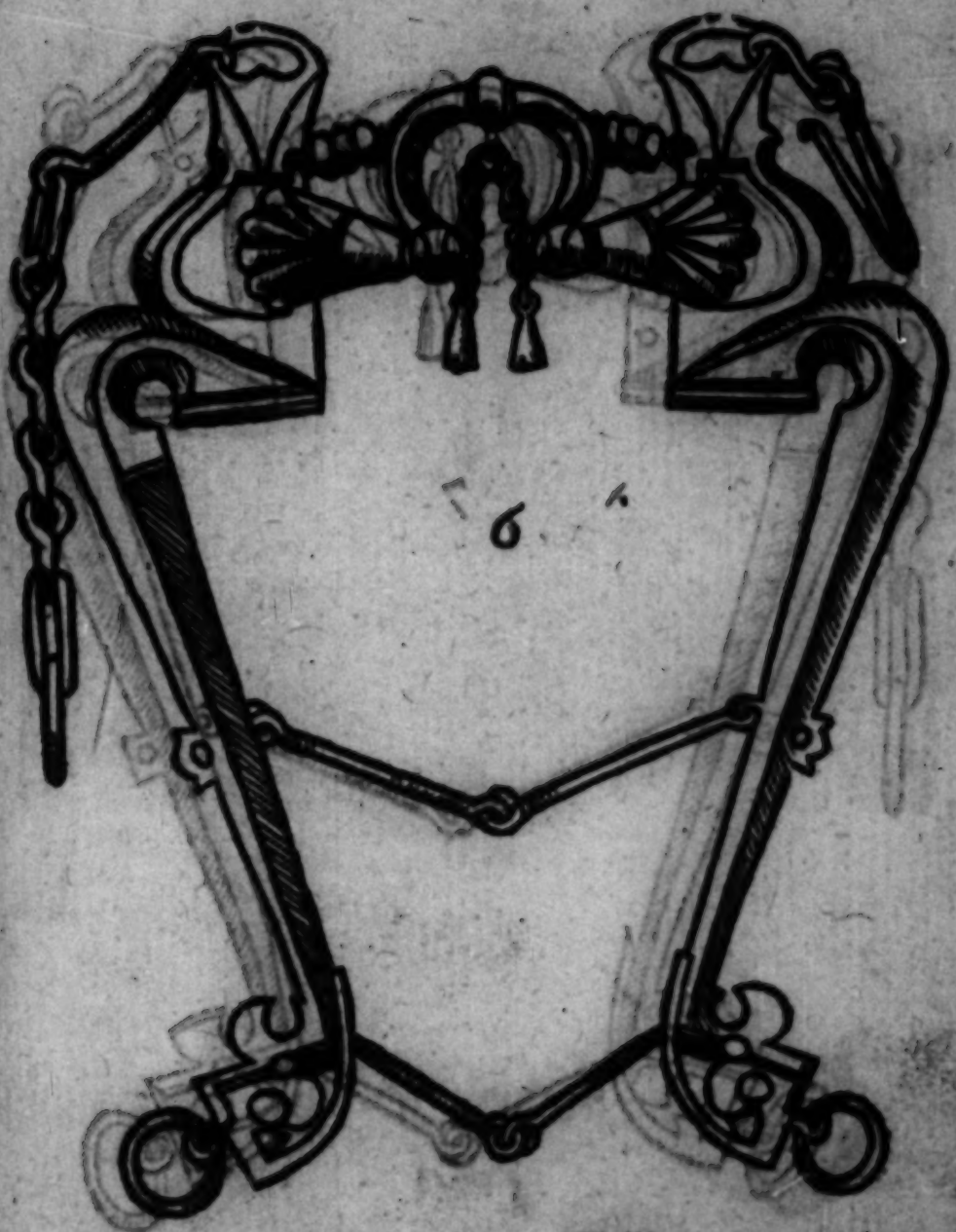


whole portes.

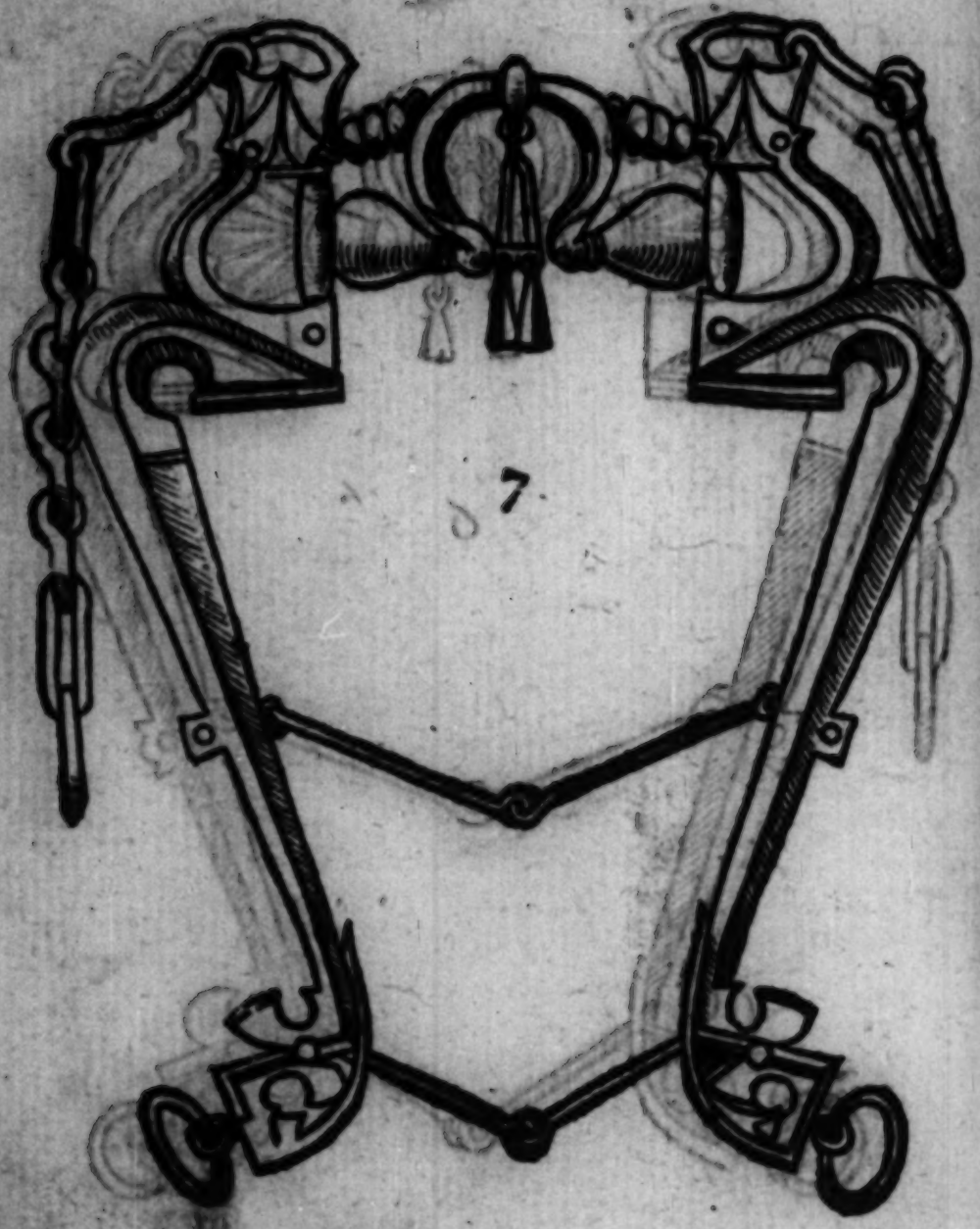
A whole pace with Campanils ha-
ning a trench above.



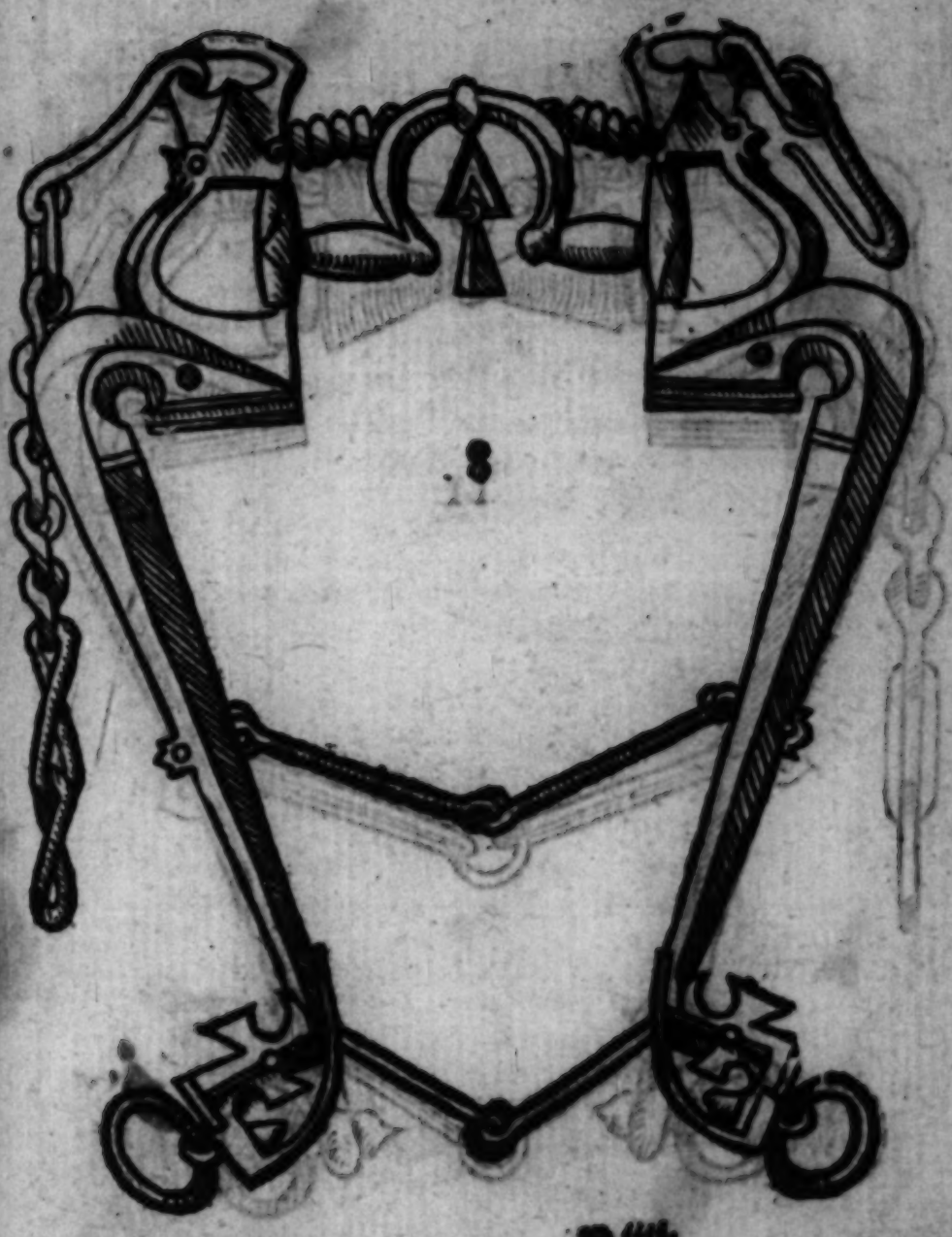
A Scatch with a whole port hauing a trench aboue.



A whole port with peares hauing a trench aboue.

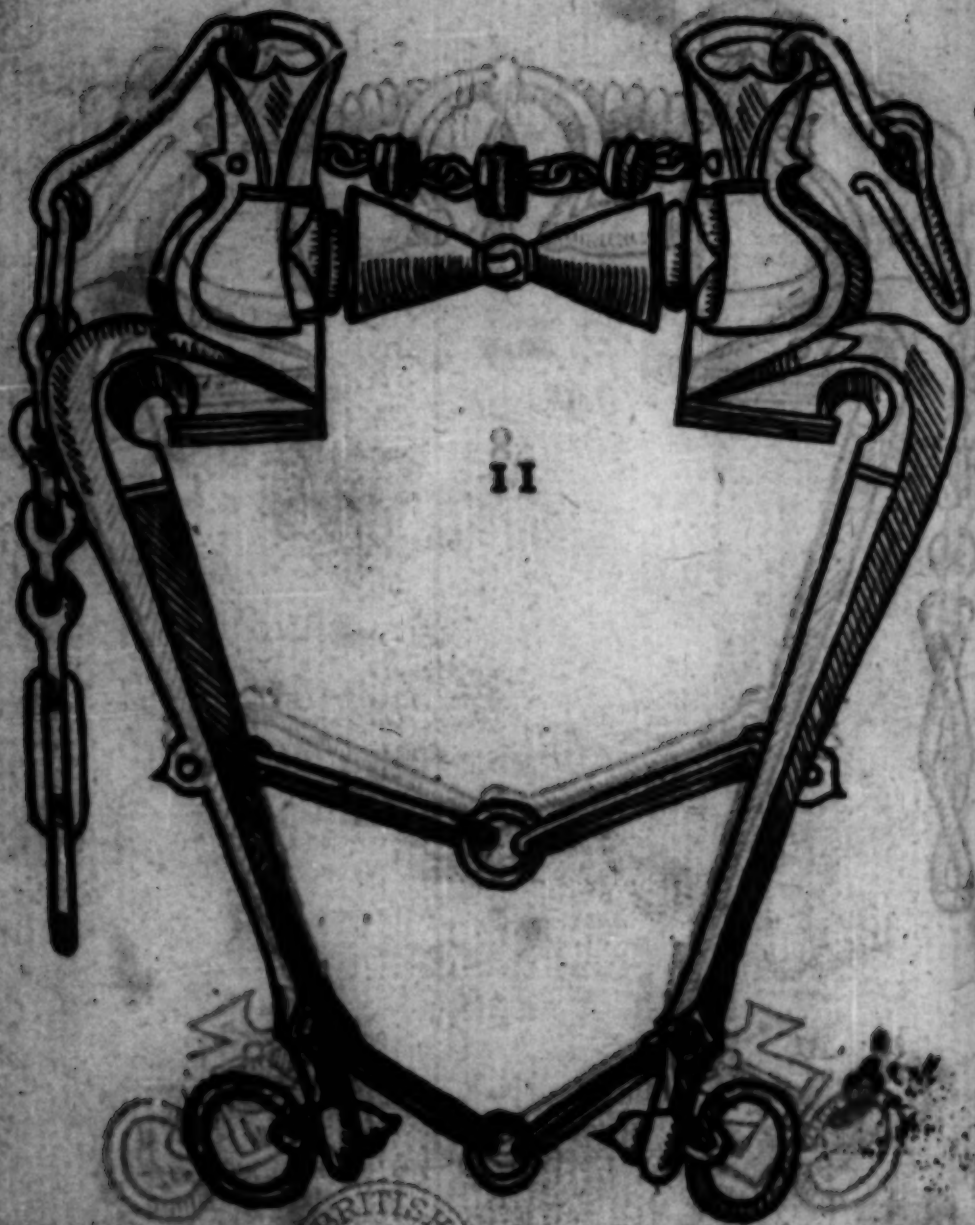


A whole port with Campaneis hauing a trench about.



A flat Campanell, having on ech out-
side one plaieng ring.

This is the 11 in the close bittes the next before the fol. 62.



BRITISH MUSEUM

THE ORDER OF *Dieting of Horſes, aſwell* when they reſte, as when they *trauell, wherein is contained,* not onely the keepers office, but alſo ma- *nie precepts neceſſarie to be knowne of* the Ferrer or Horſleach: latelie ſet forth by *Thomas Blundevill* of Newton, Flotman in Norffolke.

Imprinted at London by Peter Short dwelling on Bredſtreet hill at the ſigne of the Starre.

1597.